Technical Reference Guide

For

Compaq Deskpro and Evo Personal Computers

Covers Evo D500, Deskpro EN and Deskpro Workstation AP230 Models
Featuring
Intel Celeron and Pentium III Processors
And the
Intel 815E Chipset

COMPAQ

This document is designed to fit into a standard 3-ring binder. Provided below is a title block that can be copied and/or cut out and placed into a slip or taped onto the edge of the binder.

COMPAQ Deskpro and Evo Personal Computers
Featuring Intel Celeron and Pentium III Processors
and the Intel 815E Chipset

TRG

NOTICE

For more information regarding specifications and Compaq-specific parts please contact Compaq Computer Corporation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF TABLES

This page is intentionally blank.

Chapter 1
INTRODUCTION

1.1   ABOUT THIS GUIDE

This guide provides technical information about Compaq Evo, Deskpro EN and Deskpro Workstation AP230 Personal Computers that feature Intel Celeron or Pentium III processors and the Intel 815E chipset. This document describes in detail the system's design and operation for programmers, engineers, technicians, and system administrators, as well as end-users wanting detailed information.

The chapters of this guide primarily describe the hardware and firmware elements and primarily deal with the system board and the power supply assembly. The appendices contain general data such as error codes and information about standard peripheral devices such as keyboards, graphics cards, and communications adapters.

This guide can be used either as an online document or in hardcopy form.

1.1.1   ONLINE VIEWING

Online viewing allows for quick navigating and convenient searching through the document. A color monitor will also allow the user to view the color shading used to highlight differential data. A softcopy of the latest edition of this guide is available for downloading in .pdf file format at the URL listed below:

  http://www.compaq.com/support/techpubs/technical_reference_guides/index.html

Viewing the file requires a copy of Adobe Acrobat Reader available at no charge from Adobe Systems, Inc. at the following URL:

http://www.adobe.com

When viewing with Adobe Acrobat Reader, click on the (   ) icon or "Bookmarks" tab to display the navigation pane for quick access to particular places in the guide.

1.1.2   HARDCOPY

A hardcopy of this guide may be obtained by printing from the .pdf file. The document is designed for printing in an 8 ½ x 11-inch format. Note that printing in black and white will lose color shading properties.

1.2   ADDITIONAL INFORMATION SOURCES

For more information on components mentioned in this guide refer to the indicated manufacturers' documentation, which may be available at the following online sources:

♦   Compaq Computer Corporation: http://www.compaq.com
♦   Intel Corporation: http://www.intel.com
♦   Standard Microsystems Corporation: http://www.smsc.com
♦   Texas Instruments Inc.: http://www.ti.com
♦   USB user group: http://www.usb.org

1.3   MODEL NUMBERING CONVENTION

The model numbering convention for Compaq Deskpro units is as follows:

ENX/XNNN/NNX/N/NNNx

Removable storage: b = CD/CDRW, c = CD, d = DVD, r = CDRW, z = ZIP
Memory (in MB)
OS type: 2 = Windows 2000; 6 = Dual install. Windows NT 4.0 or 2000)
Chipset type (b = 810E, e = 815E)
Hard drive size (in GB)
Processor speed (3 digits, in MHz; 2 digits, in GHz)
Processor type: C = Celeron; P = Pentium
Form factor: S = Small form factor, L = slim desktop, C = Convertible minitower
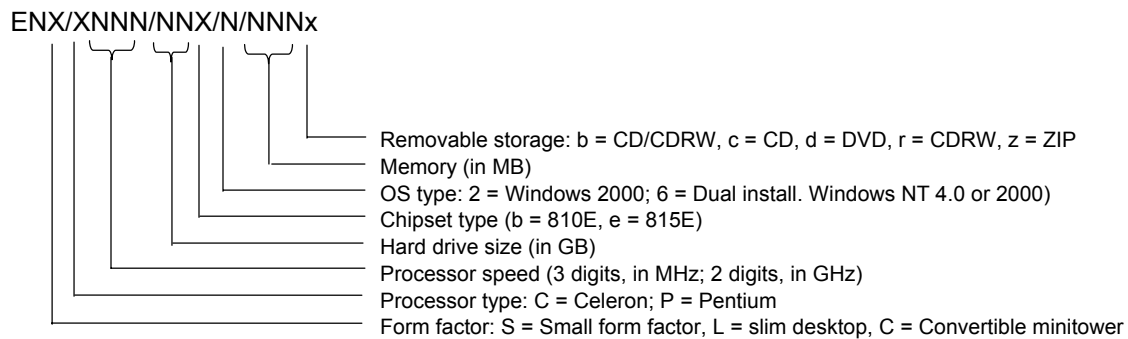
1.4   SERIAL NUMBER

The unit's serial number is located on a sticker placed on the exterior cabinet. The serial number may also be read with the Compaq Diagnostics or Compaq Insight Manager utilities.

1.5 NOTATIONAL CONVENTIONS

The notational guidelines used in this guide are described in the following subsections.

1.5.1 VALUES

Hexadecimal values are indicated by a numerical or alpha-numerical value followed by the letter "h." Binary values are indicated by a value of ones and zeros followed by the letter "b." Numerical values that have no succeeding letter can be assumed to be decimal unless otherwise stated.

1.5.2 RANGES

Ranges or limits for a parameter are shown using the following methods:

Example A: Bits <7..4> = bits 7, 6, 5, and 4.
Example B: IRQ3-7, 9 = IRQ signals 3 through 7, and IRQ signal 9

1.5.3 REGISTER NOTATION AND USAGE

This guide uses standard Intel naming conventions in discussing the microprocessor's (CPU) internal registers. Registers that are accessed through programmable I/O using an indexing scheme are indicated using the following format:

03C5.17h

               Index port
               Data port
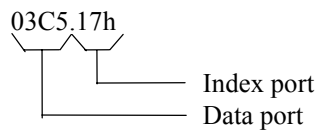
In the example above, register 03C5.17h is accessed by writing the index port value 17h to the index address (03C4h), followed by a write to or a read from port 03C5h.

1.5.4 BIT NOTATION AND BYTE VALUES

Bit designations are labeled between brackets (i.e., "bit <0 >"). Binary values are shown with the most significant bit (MSb) on the far left, least significant bit (LSb) at the far right. Byte values in hexadecimal are also shown with the MSB on the left, LSB on the right.

1.6   COMMON ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Table 1-1 lists the acronyms and abbreviations used in this guide.

Table 1-1.
Acronyms and Abbreviations

Acronym/Abbreviation	Description
A	ampere
AC	alternating current
ACPI	Advanced Configuration and Power Interface
A/D	analog-to-digital
AGP	Accelerated graphics port
API	application programming interface
APIC	Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller
APM	advanced power management
AOL	Alert-On-LAN™
ASIC	application-specific integrated circuit
AT	1) attention (modem commands) 2) 286-based PC architecture
ATA	AT attachment (IDE protocol)
ATAPI	AT attachment w/packet interface extensions
AVI	audio-video interleaved
AVGA	Advanced VGA
AWG	American Wire Gauge (specification)
BAT	Basic assurance test
BCD	binary-coded decimal
BIOS	basic input/output system
bis	second/new revision
BNC	Bayonet Neill-Concelman (connector type)
bps or b/s	bits per second
BSP	Bootstrap processor
BTO	Built to order
CAS	column address strobe
CD	compact disk
CD-ROM	compact disk read-only memory
CDS	compact disk system
CGA	color graphics adapter
Ch	Channel, chapter
cm	centimeter
CMC	cache/memory controller
CMOS	complimentary metal-oxide semiconductor (configuration memory)
Cntlr	controller
Cntrl	control
codec	1. coder/decoder; 2. compressor/decompressor
CPQ	Compaq
CPU	central processing unit
CRIMM	Continuity (blank) RIMM
CRT	cathode ray tube
CSM	Compaq system management / Compaq server management

Continued

Table 1-1. Acronyms and Abbreviations *Continued*

Acronym/Abbreviation	Description
DAC	digital-to-analog converter
DC	direct current
DCH	DOS compatibility hole
DDC	Display Data Channel
DIMM	dual inline memory module
DIN	Deutche IndustriNorm (connector type)
DIP	dual inline package
DMA	direct memory access
DMI	Desktop management interface
dpi	dots per inch
DRAM	dynamic random access memory
DRQ	data request
EDID	extended display identification data
EDO	extended data out (RAM type)
EEPROM	electrically eraseable PROM
EGA	enhanced graphics adapter
EIA	Electronic Industry Association
EISA	extended ISA
EPP	enhanced parallel port
EIDE	enhanced IDE
ESCD	Extended System Configuration Data (format)
EV	Environmental Variable (data)
ExCA	Exchangeable Card Architecture
FIFO	first in / first out
FL	flag (register)
FM	frequency modulation
FPM	fast page mode (RAM type)
FPU	Floating point unit (numeric or math coprocessor)
FPS	Frames per second
ft	Foot/feet
GB	gigabyte
GMCH	Graphics/memory controller hub
GND	ground
GPIO	general purpose I/O
GPOC	general purpose open-collector
GART	Graphics address re-mapping table
GUI	graphics user interface
h	hexadecimal
HW	hardware
hex	hexadecimal
Hz	Hertz (cycles-per-second)
ICH	I/O controller hub
IDE	integrated drive element
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IF	interrupt flag
I/F	interface

Continued

Table 1-1. Acronyms and Abbreviations *Continued*

Acronym/Abbreviation	Description
in	inch
INT	interrupt
I/O	input/output
IPL	initial program loader
IrDA	InfraRed Data Association
IRQ	interrupt request
ISA	industry standard architecture
Kb / KB	kilobits / kilobytes (x 1024 bits / x 1024 bytes)
Kb/s	kilobits per second
kg	kilogram
KHz	kilohertz
kV	kilovolt
lb	pound
LAN	local area network
LCD	liquid crystal display
LED	light-emitting diode
LPC	Low pin count
LSI	large scale integration
LSb / LSB	least significant bit / least significant byte
LUN	logical unit (SCSI)
m	Meter
MCH	Memory controller hub
MMX	multimedia extensions
MPEG	Motion Picture Experts Group
ms	millisecond
MSb / MSB	most significant bit / most significant byte
mux	multiplex
MVA	motion video acceleration
MVW	motion video window
n	variable parameter/value
NIC	network interface card/controller
NiMH	nickel-metal hydride
NMI	non-maskable interrupt
NRZI	Non-return-to-zero inverted
ns	nanosecond
NT	nested task flag
NTSC	National Television Standards Committee
NVRAM	non-volatile random access memory
OS	operating system
PAL	1. programmable array logic 2. phase alternating line
PC	Personal computer
PCA	Printed circuit assembly
PCI	peripheral component interconnect
PCM	pulse code modulation
PCMCIA	Personal Computer Memory Card International Association

Continued

Fifth Edition – March 2002

Table 1-1. Acronyms and Abbreviations *Continued*

Acronym/Abbreviation	Description
PFC	Power factor correction
PIN	personal identification number
PIO	Programmed I/O
POST	power-on self test
PROM	programmable read-only memory
PTR	pointer
RAM	random access memory
RAS	row address strobe
rcvr	receiver
RDRAM	(Direct) Rambus DRAM
RGB	red/green/blue (monitor input)
RH	Relative humidity
RMS	root mean square
ROM	read-only memory
RPM	revolutions per minute
RTC	real time clock
R/W	Read/Write
SCSI	small computer system interface
SDRAM	Synchronous Dynamic RAM
SEC	Single Edge-Connector
SECAM	sequential colour avec memoire (sequential color with memory)
SF	sign flag
SGRAM	Synchronous Graphics RAM
SIMD	Single instruction multiple data
SIMM	single in-line memory module
SMART	Self Monitor Analysis Report Technology
SMI	system management interrupt
SMM	system management mode
SMRAM	system management RAM
SPD	serial presence detect
SPDIF	Sony/Philips Digital Interface (IEC-958 specification)
SPN	Spare part number
SPP	standard parallel port
SRAM	static RAM
SSE	Streaming SIMD extensions
STN	super twist pneumatic
SVGA	super VGA
SW	software

Continued

Table 1-1. Acronyms and Abbreviations *Continued*

Acronym/Abbreviation	Description
TAD	telephone answering device
TAFI	Temperature-sensing And Fan control Integrated circuit
TCP	tape carrier package
TF	trap flag
TFT	thin-film transistor
TIA	Telecommunications Information Administration
TPE	twisted pair ethernet
TPI	track per inch
TTL	transistor-transistor logic
TV	television
TX	transmit
UART	universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter
UDMA	Ultra DMA
URL	Uniform resource locator
us / µs	microsecond
USB	Universal Serial Bus
UTP	unshielded twisted pair
V	volt
VESA	Video Electronic Standards Association
VGA	video graphics adapter
VLSI	very large scale integration
VRAM	Video RAM
W	watt
WOL	Wake-On-LAN
WRAM	Windows RAM
ZF	zero flag
ZIF	zero insertion force (socket)

Chapter 2
SYSTEM OVERVIEW

2.1   INTRODUCTION

Compaq Deskpro and Evo Personal Computers (Figure 2-1) deliver an outstanding combination of manageability, serviceability, and consistency for enterprise environments. Based on Intel Celeron and Pentium III processors with the Intel 815E Chipset, these systems emphasize performance along with industry compatibility. These models feature architectures incorporating the PCI bus. All models are easily upgradable and expandable to keep pace with the needs of the office enterprise.

Compaq Evo D500
Small Form Factor

Compaq Deskpro EN
Small Form Factor

Compaq Deskpro EN Slim Desktop

Compaq Deskpro EN
Configurable Minitower

Compaq Deskpro
Workstation AP230
Configurable Minitower

Figure 2–1.   Compaq Deskpro Personal Computers with Monitors

This chapter includes the following topics:

2.2   FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This section describes the standard features and available options.

2.2.1   STANDARD FEATURES

The following standard features are included on all models:

♦   Intel Pentium III or Celeron processor in FC-PGA370 package
♦   Intel 815E Chipset
♦   Instantly Available PC
♦   Support for three PC133 DIMMs
♦   3.5 inch, 1.44-MB diskette drive
♦   48x Max CD-ROM drive
♦   IDE controller w/UATA/100 mode support
♦   Hard drive fault prediction
♦   Two serial, two USB, one parallel, and one network interface
♦   APM 1.2 power management support
♦   Plug 'n Play compatible (with ESCD support)
♦   Intelligent Manageability support
♦   Energy Star compliant
♦   Security features including:
    •   Flash ROM Boot Block
    •   Diskette drive disable, boot disable, write protect
    •   Power-on password
    •   Administrator password
    •   Serial/parallel port disable
♦   PS/2 Compaq Easy-Access keyboard w/Windows support
♦   PS/2 Compaq Scroll Mouse

Table 2-1 shows the differences in features between the Deskpro series' based on form factor:

Table 2-1.
Feature Difference Matrix (by Form Factor)

	Small Form Factor	Slim Desktop	Configurable Minitower [1]
Series	Deskpro EN / Evo D500	Deskpro EN	Deskpro EN / Wkstn. AP230
Chassis type	Compaq Proprietary	ATX	ATX
Drive bays	3	5	5
Audio [2]	Premier Sound	Business Audio	Business Audio
Front panel audio access	Yes	No	No
AGP slot	No	Yes	Yes
# of PCI slots	3	5	5
Smart Cover Sensor/Lock	Yes	Yes	No
Power Supply	120 watt	200 watt	200 watt

NOTES:
[1] Unit may be configured as desktop or minitower.
[2] Systems with integrated AC97 sound. Some systems without integrated
    AC97 sound circuitry (legacy beep-audio only).

2.2.2 OPTIONS

The following items are available as options for all models and may be included in the standard configuration of some models:

♦   System Memory: PC133 64-MB DIMM (non-ECC)
     PC133 128-MB DIMM (non-ECC)
     PC133 256-MB DIMM (non-ECC)

♦   Hard drives/controllers: 10- or 15-GB UATA/66 hard drive
     20-GB UATA/100 hard drive

♦   Removeable media drives: 8x/4x/32x CD-RW drive
     10x/40x Max DVD-ROM drive
     LS-120 Super Disk drive
     PCI DXR DVD Decoder kit

♦   Graphics Monitors: Compaq P700 17" CRT
     Compaq P900 19" CRT
     Compaq P1100 21" CRT
     Compaq TFT5010 15" Flat Panel
     Compaq TFT8020 18" Flat Panel

2.3   MECHANICAL DESIGN

These systems are available in three form factors:

♦ Small Form Factor (SFF) – a small-footprint desktop designed for environments where both performance and space are critical issues.
♦ Slim Desktop (SDT) – a low-profile ATX-type desktop that satisfies expandability needs.
♦ Configurable Minitower (CMT) – an ATX-type unit providing the most expandability and being adaptable to desktop or floor-standing placement.

The following subsections describe the mechanical (physical) aspects of the Compaq Deskpro models.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Voltages are present within the system unit whenever the unit is plugged into a live AC outlet, regardless of the "Power On" condition. **Always disconnect the power cable from the power outlet and/or from the system unit before handling the system unit in any way.**

⚠ **NOTE:** The following information is intended primarily for identification purposes only. **Before servicing these systems refer to the applicable Maintenance And Service Guide.** Service personnel should review training materials also available on these products.

2.3.1 CABINET LAYOUTS

2.3.1.1 Front Views

Deskpro EN Small Form Factor   Evo D500 Small Form Factor   Deskpro EN Slim Desktop

Deskpro EN
Configurable Minitower
(as a Desktop)

Deskpro EN
Configurable Minitower
(as a Minitower)

Deskpro Workstation AP230
Configurable Minitower
(as a Minitower)
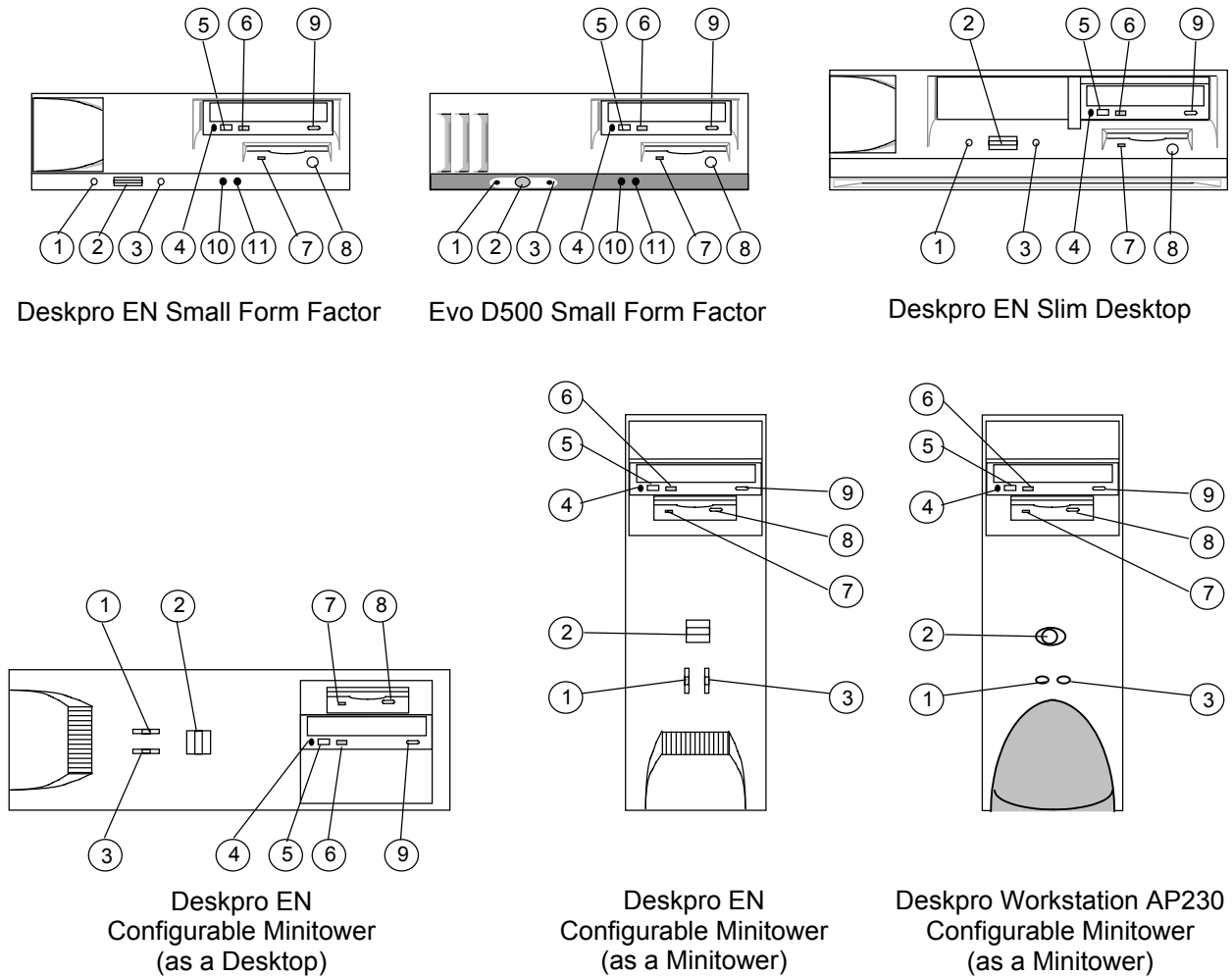
Item	Description
1	Power on LED
2	Power button
3	Hard Drive Activity LED
4	CD-ROM drive headphone jack
5	CD-ROM drive volume control
6	CD-ROM drive activity LED
7	1.44-MB diskette drive activity LED
8	1.44-MB diskette drive eject button
9	CD-ROM drive open/close button
10	Microphone In Jack [1]
11	Headphone Out Jack [1]

NOTE: [1] Systems with integrated AC97 audio.

Figure 2–2. Compaq Deskpros, Front Views

2.3.1.2   Rear Views
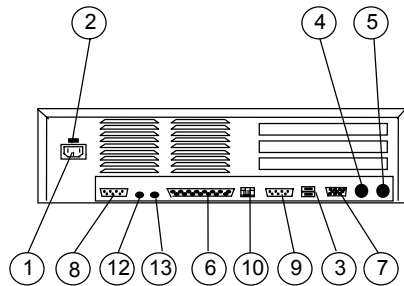
Small Form Factor
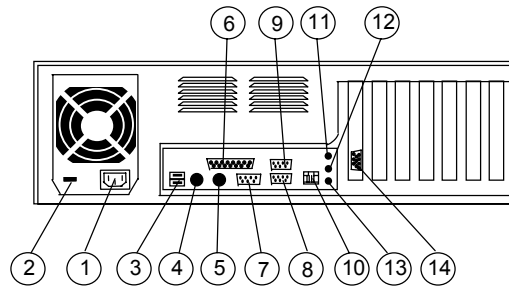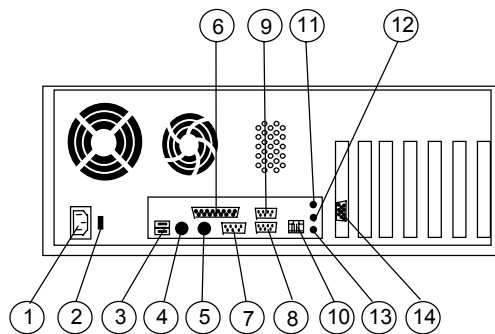
Slim Desktop

Configurable Minitower
(as a Desktop)
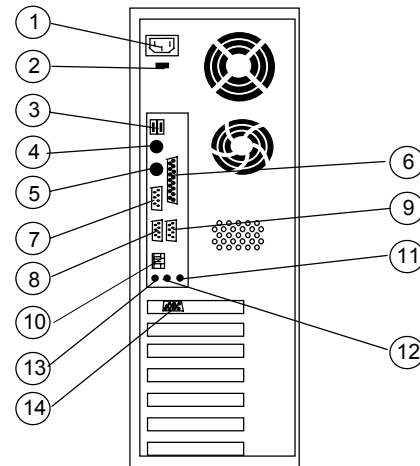
Configurable Minitower
(as a Minitower)

Item	Description	Item	Desription
1	AC line In Connector (115V/230V)	8	Serial I/F connector, COM1
2	Line voltage switch	9	Serial I/F connector, COM2
3	USB I/F connectors (top, port B; bot. , port A)	10	Network I/F connector w/status LEDs
4	PS/2 keyboard I/F connector	11	Audio line input jack [1]
5	PS/2 mouse I/F connector	12	Audio line output jack [1]
6	Parallel I/F connector	13	Audio microphone input jack [1]
7	Monitor connector	14	Monitor connector [2]

NOTES:

[1] Systems with integrated AC97 audio.
[2] Present on configurations including separate AGP graphics card.

Figure 2–3.   Compaq Deskpros and Evos, Rear Views

2.3.2 CHASSIS LAYOUTS

This section describes the internal layouts of the chassis. For detailed information on servicing the chassis refer to the multimedia training CD-ROM and/or the maintenance and service guide for these systems.

The chassis layout for the Small Form Factor is shown in Figure 2-4. Service features include:

♦ Easily-removable card cage assembly.
♦ Tilting drive bay assembly (for easy access to processor and memory sockets).
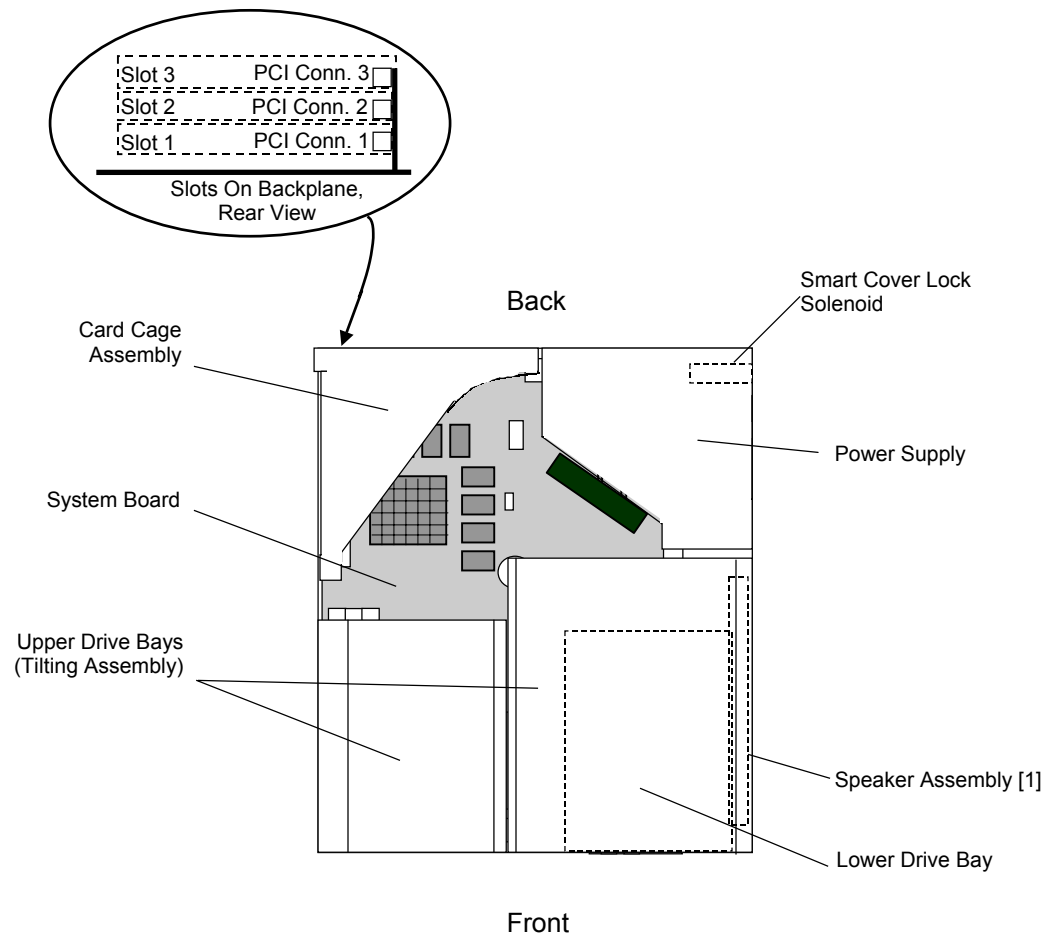
Figure 2–4. Small Form Factor Chassis Layout, Top View

NOTE:
[1] Installed on systems with integrated AC97 audio.

Figure 2-5 shows the layout for the Slim Desktop. Service features include:

♦ Tilting upper drive bay assembly (for easy access to all drive bays).
♦ Easy access to expansion slots and all socketed system board components.
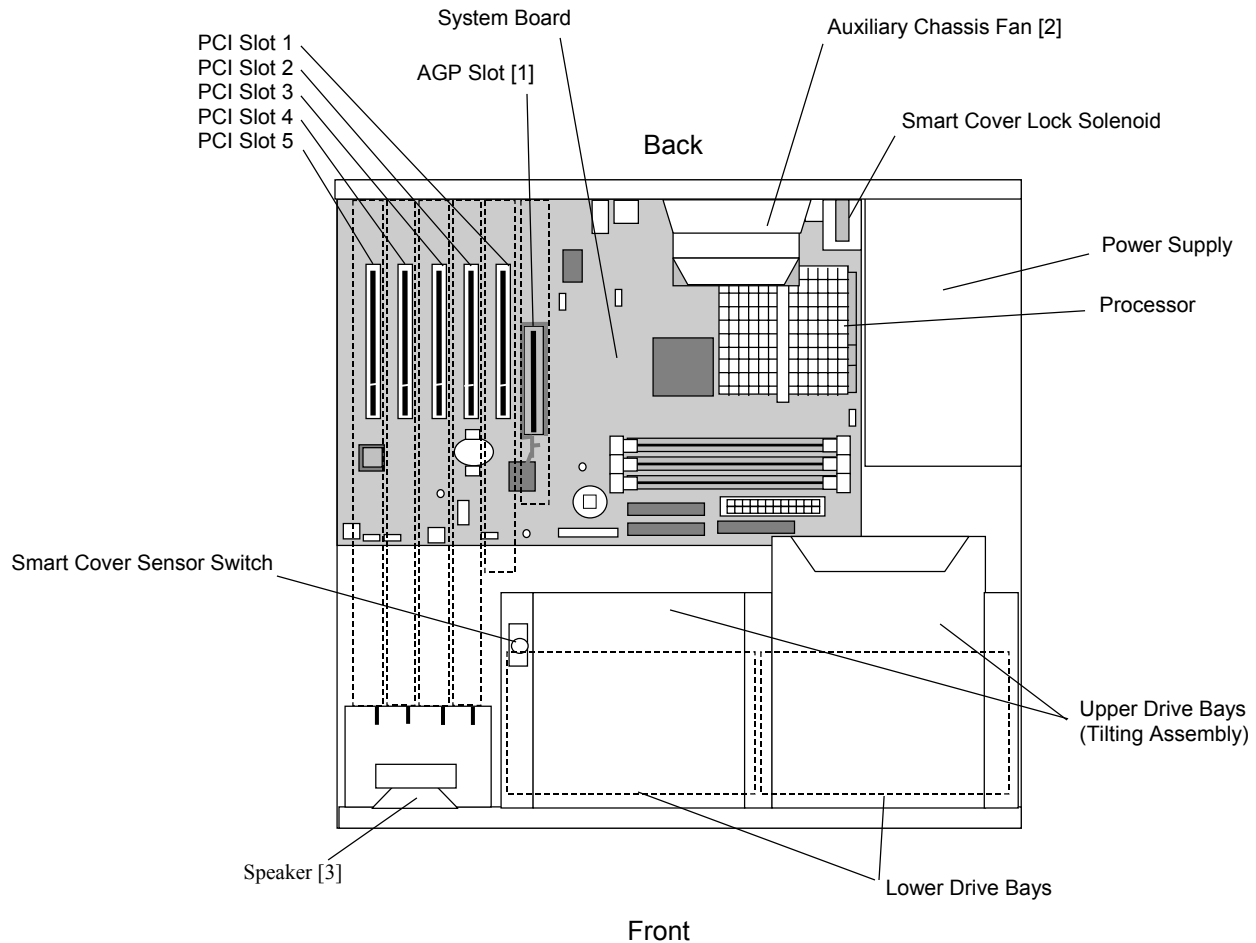
NOTES:
    [1] AGP slot may be populated with AGP graphics card or GPA/AIMM card on some configurations.
    [2] Auxiliary chassis fan installed on systems with 933 MHz (or faster) processor.
    [3] Installed on systems with integrated AC97 audio.

Figure 2–5. Slim Desktop Chassis Layout, Top View

Figure 2-5 shows the layout for the Configurable Minitower in the minitower configuration. Features include:

♦ Externally accessible drive bay assembly may be configured for minitower (vertical) or desktop (horizontal) position.

♦ Easy access to expansion slots and all socketed system board components.

Power Supply

Processor

Auxiliary Chassis Fan [1]

System Board

Back

AGP Slot [2]

PCI Slot 1
PCI Slot 2
PCI Slot 3
PCI Slot 4
PCI Slot 5

Drive Lock

Externally Accessible Drive Bays

Internal Drive Bays

Front

Speaker [3]
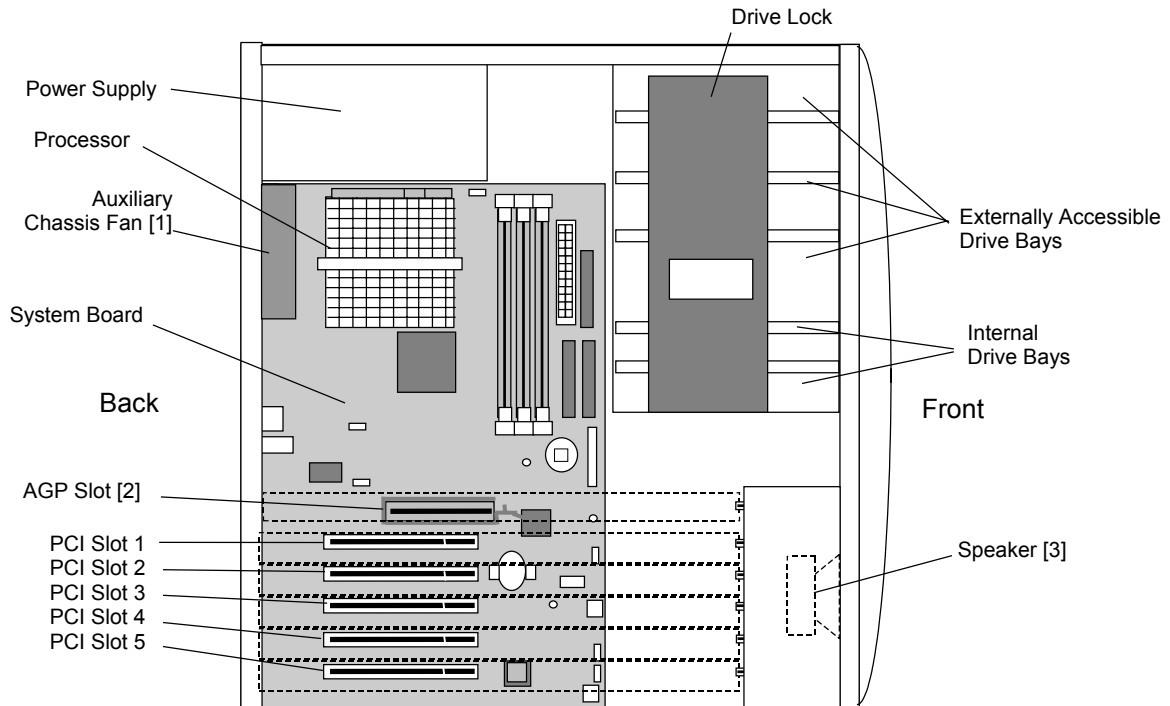
NOTES:
[1] Auxiliary chassis fan installed on systems with 933 MHz or faster processor.
[2] AGP slot may be populated with graphics card or GPA/AIMM card on some configurations.
[3] Installed systems with integrated AC97 audio.

Figure 2–6. Configurable Minitower Chassis Layout, Left Side View (Minitower configuration)

2.3.3 BOARD LAYOUTS

Riser Board PCA# 010636

System Board PCA# 010633, 010700, 011035, 011308 or 011311
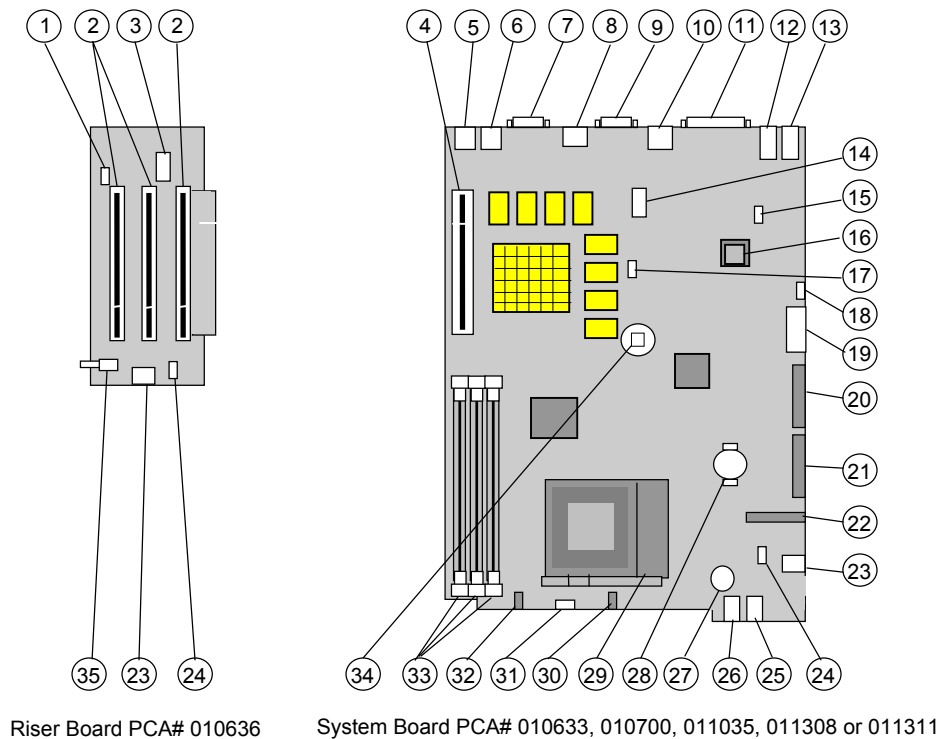
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	SCSI hard drive LED connector	19	Power supply connector
2	PCI bus expansion connectors	20	Secondary IDE connector
3	AOL/SOS connector	21	Primary IDE connector
4	Riser card connector	22	Diskette drive connector
5	PS/2 mouse connector	23	CD-ROM audio connector (right angle)
6	PS/2 keyboard connector	24	CD-ROM audio connector (vertical)
7	Monitor connector	25	Headphone output jack [3]
8	Top: USB port B; Bottom: USB port A	26	Microphone input jack [3]
9	Serial port COM2 connector	27	PCB speaker [4]
10	Network interface connector	28	CMOS battery
11	Parallel port LPT1 connector	29	Processor socket
12	Audio line in jack [3]	30	Hard drive activity LED
13	Audio line out jack [3]	31	Power button
14	Serial port COM1 header [1]	32	Power LED
15	Smart Cover Lock solenoid connector	33	DIMM sockets
16	Firmware Hub (BIOS ROM)	34	CMOS memory clear button
17	Password jumper [2]	35	Smart Cover Sensor switch
18	Speaker connector [3]	--	--

NOTES:

☐ NVIDIA graphics components installed on PCA# 010633 and 011308 only.

[1] Header connects to COM1 DB-9 connector on I/O panel via cable assembly.

[2] Jumper installed, password enabled. Jumper removed, password is cleared.

[3] Not installed on PCA# 011035.

[4] Installed on PCA# 011035 only.

Figure 2–7. Small Form Factor Board Layouts
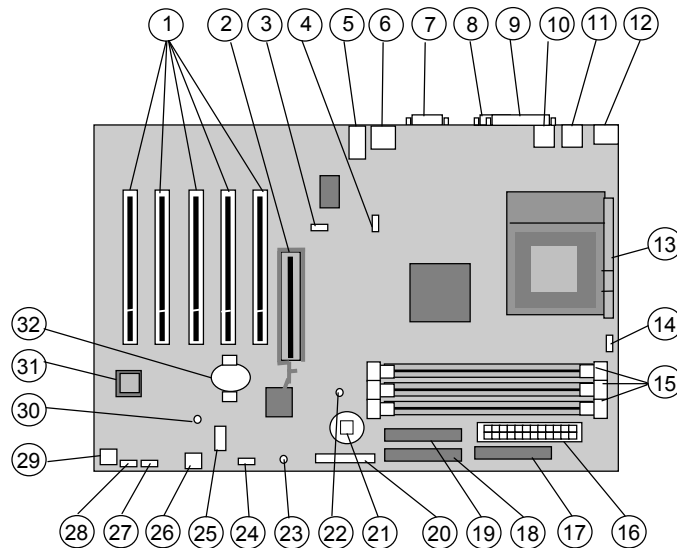
System Board PCA# 010630, 011032 or 011305

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	PCI bus expansion connectors	17	Diskette drive connector
2	AGP connector	18	Primary IDE connector
3	Chassis fan connector	19	Secondary IDE connector
4	Smart Cover Lock solenoid connector [4]	20	Power Button/LED connector [1]
5	Top-to-bottom: Line in, line out, Mic in [3]	21	CMOS clear memory button
6	Network interface connector	22	Aux 3.3 VDC LED
7	Top: serial COM2; bottom: serial COM1	23	Power button diagnostic LED
8	Monitor connector	24	Password jumper [2]
9	Parallel port LPT1 connector	25	AOL/SOS connector
10	Mouse connector	26	CD-ROM audio input connector
11	Keyboard connector	27	Smart Cover Sensor connector
12	Top: USB port B; Bottom: USB port A	28	Speaker connector
13	Processor socket	29	Aux audio input connector
14	Processor fan connector	30	Aux 5 VDC LED
15	DIMM sockets	31	Firmware hub (BIOS ROM)
16	Power supply connector	32	CMOS battery

NOTE:
    [1] Connector for power, IDE HD LED, and SCSI HD LEDs.
    [2] Jumper installed, password enabled. Jumper removed, password cleared.
    [3] Not installed on PCA# 011032 only.
    [4] Audio connector on PCA# 011305.

Figure 2–8. Slim Desktop or Configurable Minitower System Board Layout

2.4   SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

The Compaq Deskpro and Evo systems covered in this guide feature an architecture based on the Intel Pentium III or Celeron processor working with the Intel 815E chipset (Figure 2-9). All models use SDRAM for system memory, provide AGP 4X graphics support, and include PCI bus expansion capability. Standard configurations for Evo D500 small form factor models include Celeron processors. Standard configurations for Deskpro EN models include Celeron and Pentium III processors. Standard configurations for the Deskpro Workstation AP230 models include Pentium III processors.

> ⚠ **NOTE:** This guide covers only Celeron- and Pentium III-based models of Deskpro and Evo products. Pentium 4-based models of these series' are covered in another guide.

The 815E chipset includes the 82815 GMCH designed to support a Pentium III or Celeron processor with FSB speeds of either 66-, 100- or 133-MHz. The GMCH also includes an SDRAM controller supporting up to three PC133 DIMMs.

Two standard graphics configurations are available: The 82815 GMCH includes a i740-equivalent AGP 4X graphics controller that is implemented in the "integrated" configuration while an NVIDIA TNT Pro AGP 4X graphics controller is used for the "external" configuration.

All systems feature AC'97-compatible audio subsystems and include microphone and line inputs and headphone and/or line outputs. The Deskpro EN Small Form Factor system features Compaq Premier Sound components while Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems provide a business audio solution.

The 815E chipset also includes the 82801BA I/O Controller Hub (ICH2) that integrates two IDE controllers with ATA100 support, two USB interfaces, and a PCI bus controller. Also integrated into the 82801BA is an 82562-equivalent network interface controller. An SMC LPC47B357 Super I/O Controller provides serial, parallel, keyboard, mouse, and diskette drive interface functions.

The Small Form Factor system uses a 120-watt power supply while Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems feature 200-watt power supplies.

Below is a matrix defining the standard configuration differences between the Deskpro EN and the Deskpro Workstation AP230 models.

	Evo D500 SFF	**Deskpro EN [1]**	**Deskpro Workstation AP230**
Processor	Celeron [1]	Celeron or Pentium III [1]	Pentium III
Graphics	Integrated Direct AGP or NVIDIA TNT2 Pro	Integrated Direct AGP or NVIDIA TNT2 Pro	One of the following AGP 4X cards in AGP slot: Matrox Millennium G450, NVIDIA Quadro2 EX, or NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR
Embedded AC97 Audio	All models	Select models	All models
Hard Drive Type	UATA-100	UATA-100	UATA-100 or SCSI Ultra 160

NOTE:
> [1] Pentium 4-based models of this series are covered in another guide.

Figure 2–9. Compaq Deskpro Architecture, Block diagram
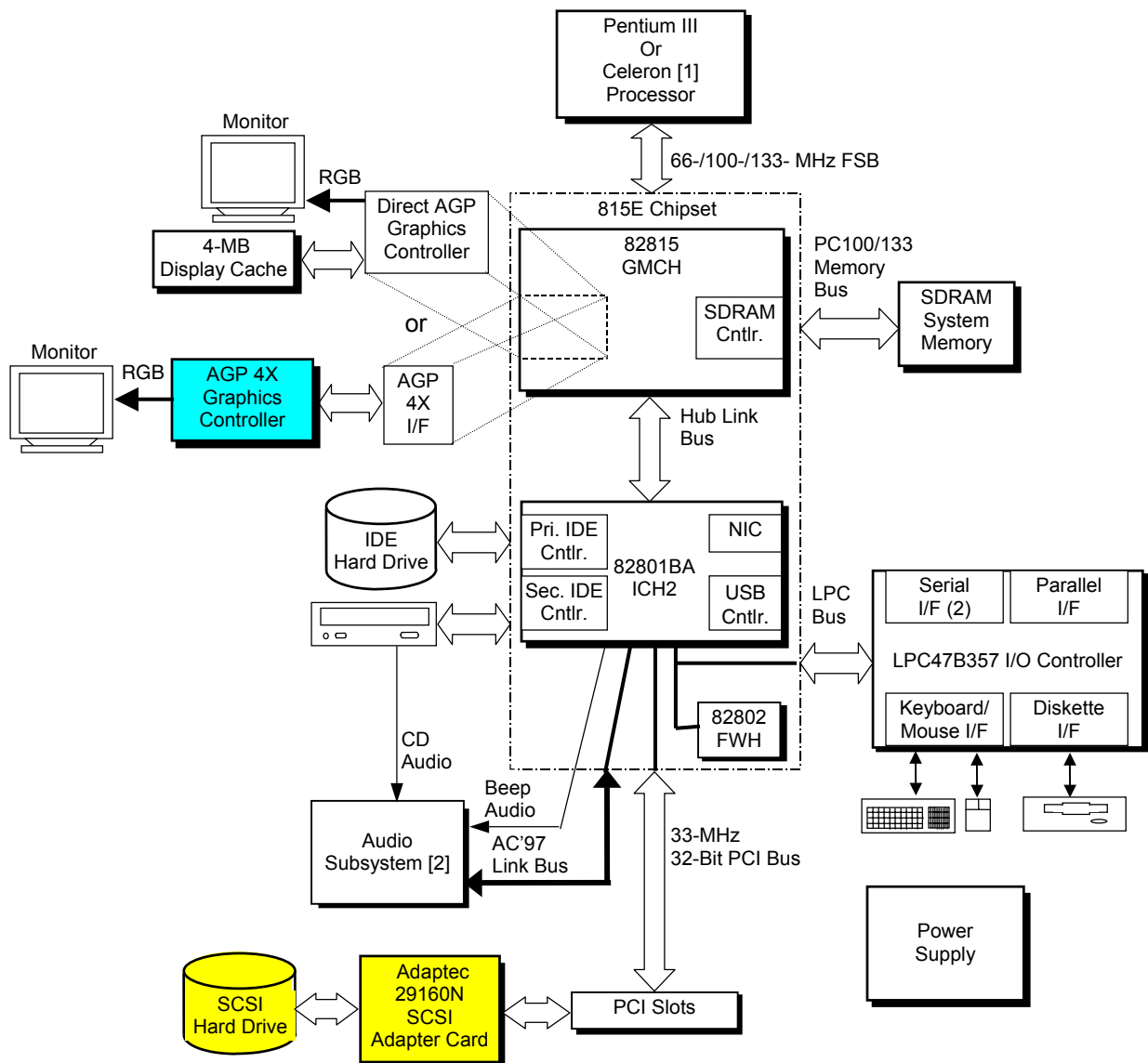
NOTES:
- Resident on system board in SFF units. Separate AGP card in SDT and CMT units.
- Select Deskpro Workstation AP230 models only.
- [1] Evo D500 and select Deskpro EN models only.
- [2] All Evo D500 and Workstation AP230 models and select Deskpro EN models.

2.4.1 PROCESSORS

The Compaq Deskpro EN Series include models based on Celeron and Pentium III processors. All Compaq Deskpro Workstation AP230 models feature the Pentium III processor. These processors are backward-compatible with software written for the Pentium II, Pentium MMX, Pentium Pro, Pentium, and x86 microprocessors. Both processor architectures include a floating-point unit, first and secondary caches, and enhanced performance for multimedia applications through the use of multimedia extension (MMX) instructions.

These systems employ a PGA370 zero-insertion-force (ZIF) socket designed for mounting a "Flip-Chip" (FC-PGA370) processor package (Figure 2-10).
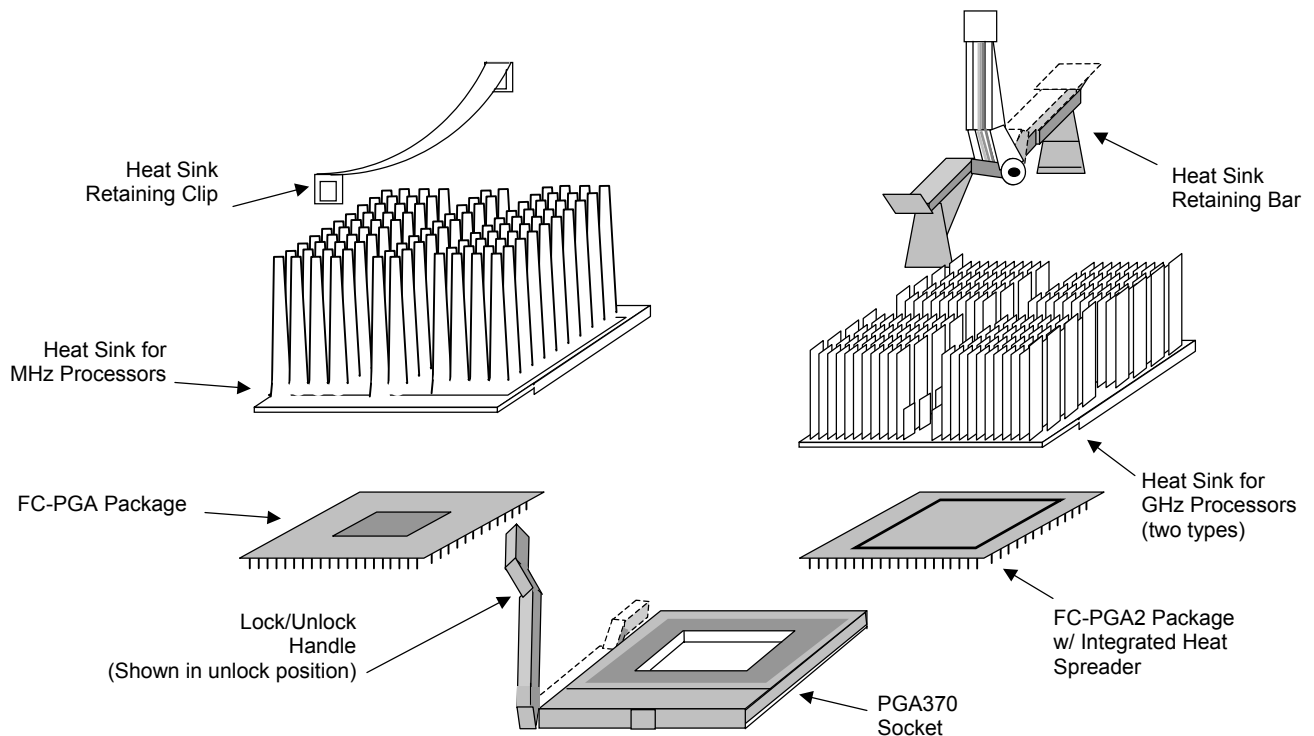
Figure 2–10. Processor Assembly And Mounting

These systems support processors fitted with passive heat sinks or processors fitted with heat sink/fan assembly with a power cable that attaches to a fan-power header provided on the system board. There are three types of passive heat sinks. The MHz processors use a heat sink that clips directly on the FC-PGA package. The GHz processors use two heat sink types; one for attaching directly to the die of the FC-PGA package and one for accommodating the Integrated Heat Spreader (IHS) used on the FC-PGA2 package.

> ⚠ **NOTE:** The three types of heat sinks are **not** interchangeable. Also, these systems support processors using the **FC-PGA or FC-PGA2 package only**. The PPGA370 package, while physically installable, will **not** work in these systems.

2.4.1.1   Celeron Processor

The Celeron processor provides economical performance and is compatible with software written for previous generation processors such as Pentium II, Pentium MMX, Pentium, and x86 processors. Featuring a Pentium-type core architecture, the Celeron processor integrates a dual-ALU CPU with a floating-point unit, 32-KB first-level cache, and 128- or 256-KB second level cache, all of which operate at full processing (CPU) speed. The Celeron processor includes MMX technology for enhanced multimedia performance and, on 566-MHz and faster versions, include streaming SIMD extensions (SSE) for enhancing 3D graphics and speech processing performance.

These systems support a Celeron processor of up to 700-MHz with a 66-MHz front side bus (FSB) or up to a 1.3-MHz processor with a 100-MHz FSB.

2.4.1.2   Pentium III Processor

The Intel Pentium III processor offers maximum performance for select Compaq Deskpros. The Pentium III processor is compatible with software written for Celeron, Pentium II, Pentium MMX, Pentium, and x86 processors. Standard configurations include processors of 667-MHz up to 1.20 GHz, depending on model.

The Pentium III processor core integrates a dual-ALU CPU with a floating-point unit, a 32-KB first-level cache, and a 256-KB second level cache, all operating at CPU speed. The Pentium III processor includes MMX technology for enhanced multimedia performance. Also included are 70 additional streaming SIMD extensions (SSE) for enhancing 3D graphics and speech processing performance.

The Pentium III processor also includes the following features:

♦   Improved speculative instruction processing
♦   Identification number

2.4.2 CHIPSET

The Intel 815E chipset consists of a Graphics Memory Controller Hub (GMCH), an enhanced I/O controller hub (ICH2), and a firmware hub (FWH). Table 2-2 lists the integrated functions provided by the chipset.

Table 2-2.
815E Chipset Functions

Component Type	Function
82815 GMCH	AGP 4X interface Direct AGP graphics controller SDRAM controller supporting 3 PC133 DIMMs 66-/100-/133-MHz FSB
82801BA ICH2	PCI bus I/F LPC bus I/F SMBus I/F IDE I/F with UATA/100 support AC '97 controller RTC/CMOS IRQ controller Power management logic USB I/F (2) Network interface controller
82802 FWH	Loaded with Compaq BIOS Random number generator

2.4.3 SUPPORT COMPONENTS

Input/output functions not provided by the chipset are handled by other support components. Some of these components also provide "housekeeping" and various other functions as well. Table 2-3 shows the functions provided by the support components.

Table 2-3.
Support Component Functions

Component Name	Function
LPC47B357 I/O Controller	Keyboard and pointing device I/F Diskette I/F Serial I/F (COM1and COM2) Parallel I/F (LPT1, LPT2, or LPT3) AGP, PCI reset generation Interrupt (IRQ) serializer Power button logic GPIO ports
AD1885 Audio Codec [1]	Audio mixer Digital-to-analog converter Analog-to-digital converter Analog I/O

NOTE:
[1] Systems with embedded AC97 audio.

2.4.4 SYSTEM MEMORY

These systems support and come configured with PC133 SDRAM and provide three DIMM sockets with at least one socket populated with a single- or double-sided memory module. Up to 512 megabytes of memory may be installed using one, two, or three DIMMs.

> **NOTE:** There are restrictions on PC133 operation. These restrictions are described in Chapter 3 "Processor/Memory Subsystem."

2.4.5 MASS STORAGE

All models include a 3.5 inch 1.44-MB diskette drive installed as drive A. Most models also include a CD-ROM and either a 10-, 15-, or 20-GB hard drive. Standard hard drives feature Drive Protection System (DPS) support. All systems provide two (one primary, one secondary) PCI bus-mastering Enhanced IDE (EIDE) controllers integrated into the chipset. Each controller provides UATA/100 support for two drives for a total of four IDE devices, although the form factor will determine the actual number of drive spaces available.

2.4.6 SERIAL AND PARALLEL INTERFACES

All models include two serial ports and a parallel port accessible at the rear of the chassis. Each serial port is RS-232-C/16550-compatible and supports standard baud rates up to 115,200 as well as two high-speed baud rates of 230K and 460K , and utilize DB-9 connectors. The parallel interface is Enhanced Parallel Port (EPP1.9) and Enhanced Capability Port (ECP) compatible, and supports bi-directional data transfers through a DB-25 connector.

2.4.7 UNIVERSAL SERIAL BUS INTERFACE

All models feature two Universal Serial Bus (USB) ports that provide a 12Mb/s interface for peripherals. The USB provides hot plugging/unplugging (Plug 'n Play) functionality.

2.4.8 NETWORK INTERFACE CONTROLLER

All models feature a Network Interface Controller (NIC) integrated on the system board. Equivalent to the Intel 82559 10/100 NIC, the controller provides automatic selection of 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX operation with a local area network and includes power-down, wake-up, and Alert-On-LAN features. An RJ-45 connector with integrated status LEDs is provided on the rear panel.

2.4.9 GRAPHICS SUBSYSTEM

Two types of graphics subsystems are offered as standard in these systems; integrated and external. The 82815 GMCH component includes an AGP 4X interface and a Direct AGP graphics controller. The "integrated" configuration uses the graphics controller within the 82815 GMCH to drive an RGB monitor. The "external" configuration features an AGP graphics controller that, due to its presence on the AGP bus, disables the GMCH's integrated controller.

> △ **NOTE**: Small Form Factor units do not have an AGP slot and are shipped as using the integrated Direct AGP graphics solution or with an embedded NVIDIA TNT2 Pro graphics controller. The customer must choose which graphics solution at the time of purchase.

The Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower units feature an AGP slot that is used for either mounting a AGP graphics card or for mounting a GPA/AIMM card that supports the integrated i740 controller. The AGP slot includes both Type 1 and Type 2 retention mechanisms. Dual-monitor support is possible by adding a PCI graphics card to either configuration. Table 2-4 lists the key features of the standard graphics subsystems employed in these systems:

Table 2-4.
Standard AGP Graphics Comparison

	Integrated GMCH's Controller	NVIDIA TNT2 PRO	NVIDIA Quadro2 EX	NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR	Matrox Millennium G450
Std. Config. In	EN	EN [2] / Evo	Wkstn. AP230	Wkstn. AP230	Wkstn. AP230
Recommended for:	Hi 2D, Entry 3D	Hi 2D, Entry 3D	Hi 2D, Entry 3D	Hi 2D, Entry 3D	Multi-monitor Hi 2D
Bus Type	Direct AGP	AGP 2X/4X	AGP 2X/4X	AGP 2X/4X	AGP 2X/4X
Mem. Amount	4 MB [1]	16 MB	32 MB	32 MB	32 MB
Mem. Type	SDRAM	SGRAM	SDRAM	SDRAM	DDR SDRAM
DAC Speed	230 MHz	300 MHz	350 MHz	350 MHz	350 MHz [4]
Max. 2D Res. @ # of colors	1600x1200 @ 256	1920x1200 @ 16.7M	1920x1200 @ 16.7M	1920x1200 @ 16.7M	2048x768 @ 65K
Software Compatibility	Direct Draw, Direct 3D, Active Movie, Media Player	Quick Draw, DCI/DirectX, Direct Draw, Direct Show, MPEG 1/2, Indeo	Quick Draw, DCI/DirectX, Direct Draw, Direct Show, MPEG 1/2, Indeo	Quick Draw, DCI/DirectX, Direct Draw, Direct Show, MPEG 1/2, Indeo	Quick Draw, DCI/DirectX, Direct Draw, MPEG 1/2, OpenGL, Direct 3D
Aux. I/O	None	VESA I/F	VESA I/F	VESA I/F	VESA I/F
Outputs	1 RGB	1 RGB	1 RGB	1 RGB, 1 DVI	2 RGB
Upgrade path	Add AGP card [3]	Add AGP card [3]	Replace AGP card	Replace AGP card	Replace AGP card

NOTES:
[1] Display cache resident on Deskpro EN SFF system board.
    Installed as a GPA/AIMM on Deskpro EN SDT/CMT systems.
[2] Controller and memory resident on Deskpro EN SFF system board.
    Separate card on Deskpro EN SDT/CMT systems.
[3] Deskpro EN SFF systems "upgradeable" with PCI graphics card only.
[4] Primary RAMDAC. Secondary RAMDAC operates @ 200 MHz.

2.4.10 AUDIO SUBSYSTEM

Models that feature an embedded AC'97 audio system uses the integrated AC97 audio controller of the chipset and an AC'97-compliant audio codec. These systems include microphone and line inputs and headphone and line outputs. The AC'97-equipped Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower models include a 3-watt output amplifier driving an internal speaker. The AC'97-equipped Small Form Factor models feature Compaq Premier Sound consisting of a five-level equalizer designed to compensate for chassis acoustics and a low-distortion 5-watt amplifier driving a speaker for optimum sound. Models that do not include integrated AC'97 circuitry provide legacy PC-beep audio support and may be upgraded with the installation of a PCI audio card.

2.5   SPECIFICATIONS

This section includes the environmental, electrical, and physical specifications for the Compaq Deskpro EN Series Personal Computers. Where provided, metric statistics are given in parenthesis. All specifications subject to change without notice.

Table 2-5.
Environmental Specifications (Factory Configuration)

Parameter	Operating	Nonoperating
Ambient Air Temperature	50° to 95° F (10° to 35° C, max. rate of change $\leq$ 10°C/Hr)	-24° to 140° F (-30° to 60° C, max. rate of change $\leq$ 20°C/Hr)
Shock (w/o damage)	5 Gs [1]	20 Gs [1]
Vibration	0.000215 G^2/Hz, 10-300 Hz	0.0005 G^2/Hz, 10-500 Hz
Humidity	10-90% Rh @ 28° C max. wet bulb temperature	5-95% Rh @ 38.7^o C max. wet bulb temperature
Maximum Altitude	10,000 ft (3048 m) [2]	30,000 ft (9,144 m) [2]

NOTE:

[1] Peak input acceleration during an 11 ms half-sine shock pulse.
[2] Maximum rate of change: 1500 ft/min.

Table 2-6.
Electrical Specifications

Parameter	U.S.	International
Input Line Voltage:		
Nominal:	100 - 127 VAC	200 - 240 VAC
Maximum:	90 - 132 VAC	180 - 264 VAC
Input Line Frequency Range:		
Nominal:	50 - 60 Hz	50 - 60 Hz
Maximum:	47 - 63 Hz	47 - 63 Hz
Power Supply:		
Maximum Continuous Power		
Small Form Factor	120 watts	120 watts
Slim Desktop or Configurable Minitower	200 watts	200 watts
Maximum Line Current Draw		
Small Form Factor	4.0 A	2.0 A
Slim Desktop or Configurable Minitower	6.0 A	3.0 A

Table 2-7.
Physical Specifications

Parameter	Small Form Factor	Slim Desktop	Configurable Minitower [3]
Height	3.8 in (9.70 cm)	5.38 in (13.67 cm)	17.65 in (44.83 cm)
Width	12.5 in (31.75 cm)	17.65 in (44.83 cm)	6.60 in (16.76 cm)
Depth	14.6 in (37.10 cm)	17.11 in (43.46 cm)	17.11 in (43.46 cm)
Weight (nom.) [1]	20 lb (9.1 kg)	26 lb (12 kg)	26 lb (12 kg)
Maximum Supported Weight [2]	100 lb (45.5 kg)	100 lb (45.5 kg)	100 lb (45.5 kg)

NOTES:
[1] System weight may vary depending on installed drives/peripherals.
[2] Assumes reasonable article(s) such as a display monitor and/or another system unit.
[3] Minitower configuration. For desktop configuration, swap Height and Width dimensions.

Table 2-8.
Diskette Drive Specifications
(Compaq SP# 179161-001)

Parameter	Measurement
Media Type	3.5 in 1.44 MB/720 KB diskette
Height	1/3 bay (1 in)
Bytes per Sector	512
Sectors per Track:	
High Density	18
Low Density	9
Tracks per Side:	
High Density	80
Low Density	80
Read/Write Heads	2
Average Access Time:	
Track-to-Track (high/low)	3 ms/6 ms
Average (high/low)	94 ms/173ms
Settling Time	15 ms
Latency Average	100 ms

Table 2-9.
48x CD-ROM Drive Specifications
(SP# 187217-B21)

Parameter	Measurement
Interface Type	IDE
Transfer Rate:	
Max. Sustained	4800 KB/s
Burst	16.6 MB/s
Media Type	Mode 1,2, Mixed Mode, CD-DA, Photo CD, Cdi, CD-XA
Capacity:	
Mode 1, 12 cm	550 MB
Mode 2, 12 cm	640 MB
8 cm	180 MB
Center Hole Diameter	15 mm
Disc Diameter	8/12 cm
Disc Thickness	1.2 mm
Track Pitch	1.6 um
Laser	
Beam Divergence	53.5 +/- 1.5 °
Output Power	53.6 0.14 mW
Type	GaAs
Wave Length	790 +/- 25 nm
Average Access Time:	
Random	<100 ms
Full Stroke	<150 ms
Audio Output Level	0.7 Vrms
Cache Buffer	128 KB

Table 2-10.
Hard Drive Specifications

Parameter	10.0 GB	15.0 GB	20.0 GB
Drive Size	3.5"	3.5"	5.25"
Interface	UATA/66	UATA/66	UATA/100
Drive Protection System Support?	Yes	Yes	Yes
Transfer Rate (max)	66.6 MB/s	66.6 MB/s	100 MB/s
Typical Seek Time (w/settling) [1]			
Single Track	1.7 ms	2.0 ms	1.0 ms
Average	8.5 ms	9.5 ms	9.0 ms
Full Stroke	15 ms	21 ms	20 ms
Disk Format (logical):			
# of Cylinders	16383	16383	16383
# of Data Heads	16	16	16
# of Sectors per Track	63	63	63
Rotation Speed	7200 RPM	7200 RPM	7200 RPM
Drive Fault Prediction	SMART III	SMART III	SMART III

NOTE:

    Actual times may vary depending on specific drive installed.
    All EMEA units feature Quiet Drives.

This page is intentionally blank.

Chapter 3
PROCESSOR/
MEMORY SUBSYSTEM

3.1   INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the processor/cache memory subsystem of Compaq Deskpro and Evo Personal Computers covered in this guide. These systems feature a Celeron or Pentium III processor and the 815E chipset (Figure 3-1). The 815E chipset supports up to three SDRAM DIMMs (maximum of four sides, refer to section 3.3 for more information).
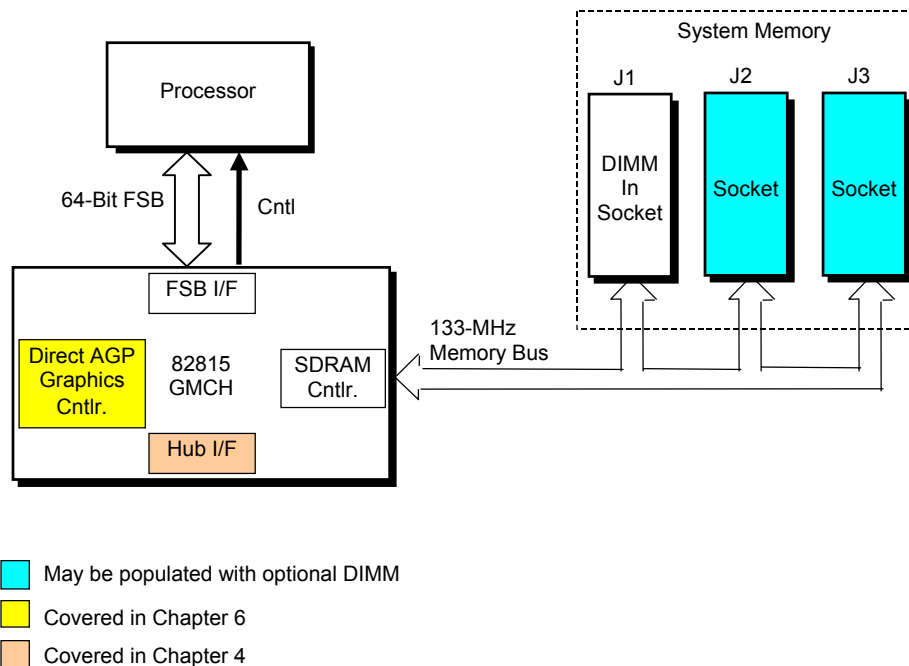
Figure 3–1.   Processor/Memory Subsystem Architecture

This chapter includes the following topics:

♦ Processor [3.2]   page 3-2
♦ Memory subsystem [3.3]   page 3-5
♦ Subsystem configuration {3.4] page 3-8

3.2   PROCESSOR

The Compaq Deskpro EN is shipped with either a Celeron or Pentium III processor. The Compaq Deskpro Workstation AP230 is shipped with a Pentium III processor.

3.2.1   CELERON PROCESSOR

The Celeron processor (Figure 3-2) uses a dual-ALU CPU with branch prediction and MMX support, floating point unit (FPU) for math coprocessing, a 32-KB primary (L1) cache, and a 128- or 256-KB secondary (L2) ECC cache. All internal functions, except for the front side bus interface (FSB I/F), operate at processor speed.

☐ Core processing speed   ▧ Host bus speed
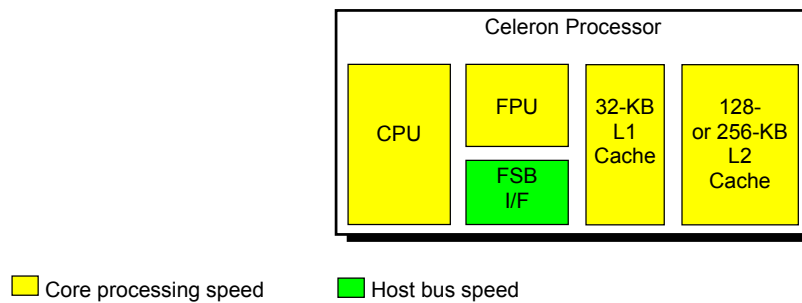
Figure 3–2.   Celeron Processor Internal Architecture

The Celeron processor is software-compatible with earlier generation Pentium II, Pentium MMX, Pentium, and x86 processors. The MMX support provided by the Celeron consists of 57 special instructions for accelerating multimedia communications applications. Specific applications that can benefit from MMX technology include 2D/3D graphics, audio, speech recognition, video codecs, and data compression. These systems support the Celeron processors listed in the following table:

Table 3-1.
Celeron Processor Statistical Comparison

Processor	L2 Cache Size	FSB Speed	Core Voltage (VccP)	System Bd. Support
Celeron 566-600 MHz	128 KB	66 MHz	1.50 VDC	[1]
Celeron 633-766MHz	128 KB	66 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Celeron 800 MHz-1.10 GHz	128 KB	100 MHz	1.70 VDC	[2]
Celeron 1.2 GHz	256 KB	100 MHz	1.475 VDC	[2]
Celeron 1.3 GHz	256 KB	100 MHz	1.50 VDC	[2]

NOTES:
    [1] Supported by all system board PCA#s.
    [2] Supported by system board PCA#s 011305, 011308, 011311 only.

3.2.2 PENTIUM III PROCESSOR

The Pentium III processor's architecture (Figure 3-3) includes the same core functionality as described previously for the Celeron processor but includes a larger, 8-way set-associative L2 ECC cache, additional processing features, and higher processing speeds.

☐ Core processing speed   ☐ Host bus speed
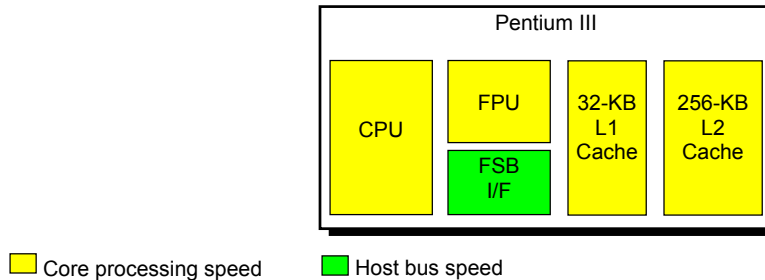
Figure 3–3. Pentium III Processor Internal Architecture

The following table lists the key statistics of supported Pentium III processors:

Table 3-2.
Pentium III Processor Statistical Comparison

Processor	Part Marking	Core/L1/L2 Speed	Core Voltage (VccP)	System Bd. Support
Pentium III 600	SL4CL	533-MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 667	SL4CJ	600 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 733	SL4CG	733 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 800	SL4CD	800 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 866	SL4CB	866 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 933	SL4C9	933 MHz	1.65 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 1.00	N/A	1.01 GHz	1.70 VDC	[1]
Pentium III 1.10	N/A	1.10 GHz	1.75 VDC	[2]
Pentium III 1.13	N/A	1.13 GHz	1.75 VDC	[2]
Pentium III 1.20	N/A	1.20 GHz	1.75 VDC	[2]

NOTE:
> FSB of all processors operates at 133 MHz.
> [1] Supported by all system board PCA#s.
> [2] Supported by system board PCA#s 011305, 011308, 011311 only.

The Pentium III processor is software-compatible with Celeron, Pentium II, Pentium MMX, Pentium, and x86 processors. The Pentium III processor features 70 FPU-based streaming SIMD extensions (SSE) that, when implemented by appropriate software, can enhance 3D transforming and speech processing operations. Operating system requirements for SSE support are as follows:

Operating System	Level of SSE Support
Windows 95	No SSE support
Windows 98, OSR0	SSE support though ISV and OpenGL 6.1 applications only
Windows 98, OSR1	SSE support though ISV, OpenGL, and DirectX applications
Windows 2000	SSE support with ISV, OpenGL, and DirectX applications
Windows NT 4.0	SSE support requires driver and Service Pack 4 (SP5 recommended)

3.2.3 PROCESSOR UPGRADING

3.2.3.1   Physical Considerations In Upgrading

All units use the PGA370 ZIF mounting socket and ship with a processor in a Flip-Chip (FC-PGA370) package installed with a passive heat sink.

⚠	**CAUTION**: These systems are specifically designed for processors using the **FC-PGA370** package. Other processor packages (such as the PPGA370 package) will physically fit the socket but are **not** compatible due to electrical and thermal issues.

The FC-PGA370 package consists of the processor die mounted "upside down" on the substrate. This arrangement allows the heat sink to come in direct contact with the processor die. The heat sink and attachment clip are specially designed provide maximum heat transfer from the processor component.

⚠	**CAUTION**: For proper heat dissipation, attachment of the heat sink to the processor is critical on these systems. Improper attachment of the heat sink will likely result in a thermal condition. Although the system is designed to detect thermal conditions and automatically shut down, such a condition could still result in damage to the system . Refer to the applicable Maintenance and Service Guide for detailed processor removal/replacement procedures.

3.2.3.2   Electrical Considerations In Upgrading

These systems are designed to support the processors listed in Tables 3-1 and 3-2 on the previous pages. **Processor speeds above 1.0 GHz are supported only by PCA#s 011305, 011308, and 011311**. Upgrading the processor may require the connection of a power cable from the processor's heat sink-mounted fan to a header on the system board.

The processor core voltage and operating frequency are automatically set early in power cycle process. No DIP switch settings are involved in replacing the processor.

3.2.3.3   Software Considerations In Upgrading

Although the Celeron and Pentium III processors are software-compatible, it is recommended that the replacement processor be either of the same family as the existing processor (i.e., Celeron for Celeron, or Pentium for Pentium) or an upgrade (Pentium III for a Celeron). A "downgrade" (going from a Pentium III to a Celeron) may result in problems with resident software that has been "tuned' to take advantage of the Pentium III processor's special features and performance.

3.3   MEMORY SUBSYSTEM

The system boards for these systems provide three 168-pin SDRAM DIMM sockets that accommodate single- or double-sided DIMMs and can handle a maximum of 512 megabytes of SDRAM. These systems support (and are shipped with) PC133 SDRAM for system memory, providing a maximum possible throughput of 1 GB/s.

> **NOTE**: For 133-MHz SDRAM operation to occur, **all** of the following criteria must be met:
>
> 1. The processor's FSB must operate at 133-MHz.
> 2. All installed DIMMs must be PC133-compliant.
> 3. The total number of DIMM "sides" is no greater than four:
>   a. One double-sided and two single-sided DIMMs or
>   b. Three single-sided DIMMs or
>   c. Two double-sided DIMMs (with remaining socket empty).
>
> **The BIOS will automatically switch the SDRAM speed to 100 MHz if all of the above criteria are not met.**

If using memory modules from third party suppliers the following DIMM type is recommended:

> Unbuffered 133-MHz SDRAM (PC133)
> CAS latency (CL) 2 or 3
> Data access time (clock-to-data out) of $\leq$ 9.0 ns

The SPD format supported by these systems complies with the JEDEC specification for 128-byte EEPROMs. This system also provides support for 256-byte EEPROMs to include additional Compaq-added features such as part number and serial number. The SPD format as supported in this system (SPD rev. 1) is shown in Table 3-3.

The key SPD bytes that BIOS checks for compatibility are 2, 9, 10, 18, 23, 24, and 126. If BIOS detects **EDO** or **ECC DIMMs** a **"memory incompatible"** message will be displayed and the system will halt. **This system is designed for using non-ECC DIMMs only**. Refer to chapter 8 for a description of the BIOS procedure of interrogating DIMMs.

An installed mix of DIMM types (PC100 and PC133, CL 2 and CL 3) is acceptable but operation will be constrained to the level of the DIMM with the lowest performance specification.

If an incompatible DIMM is detected the NUM LOCK will blink for a short period of time during POST and an error message may or may not be displayed before the system hangs.

The SPD address map is shown below.

Table 3-3.
SPD Address Map (SDRAM DIMM)

Byte	Description	Notes	Byte	Description	Notes
0	No. of Bytes Written Into EEPROM	[1]	25	Min. CLK Cycle Time at CL X-2	[7]
1	Total Bytes (#) In EEPROM	[2]	26	Max. Acc. Time From CLK @ CL X-2	[7]
2	Memory Type		27	Min. Row Prechge. Time	[7]
3	No. of Row Addresses On DIMM	[3]	28	Min. Row Active to Delay	[7]
4	No. of Column Addresses On DIMM		29	Min. RAS to CAS Delay	[7]
5	No. of Module Banks On DIMM		30, 31	Reserved	
6, 7	Data Width of Module		32..61	Superset Data	[7]
8	Voltage Interface Standard of DIMM		62	SPD Revision	[7]
9	Cycletime @ Max CAS Latency (CL)	[4]	63	Checksum Bytes 0-62	
10	Access From Clock	[4]	64-71	JEP-106E ID Code	[8]
11	Config. Type (Parity, Nonparity, etc.)		72	DIMM OEM Location	[8]
12	Refresh Rate/Type	[4] [5]	73-90	OEM's Part Number	[8]
13	Width, Primary DRAM		91, 92	OEM's Rev. Code	[8]
14	Error Checking Data Width		93, 94	Manufacture Date	[8]
15	Min. Clock Delay	[6]	95-98	OEM's Assembly S/N	[8]
16	Burst Lengths Supported		99-125	OEM Specific Data	[8]
17	No. of Banks For Each Mem. Device	[4]	126	Intel frequency check	
18	CAS Latencies Supported	[4]	127	Reserved	
19	CS# Latency	[4]	128-131	Compaq header "CPQ1"	[9]
20	Write Latency	[4]	132	Header checksum	[9]
21	DIMM Attributes		133-145	Unit serial number	[9] [10]
22	Memory Device Attributes		146	DIMM ID	[9] [11]
23	Min. CLK Cycle Time at CL X-1	[7]	147	Checksum	[9]
24	Max. Acc. Time From CLK @ CL X-1	[7]		Reserved	[9]

NOTES:
[1] Programmed as 128 bytes by the DIMM OEM
[2] Must be programmed to 256 bytes.
[3] High order bit defines redundant addressing: if set (1), highest order RAS# address must be
    re-sent as highest order CAS# address.
[4] Refer to memory manufacturer's datasheet
[5] MSb is Self Refresh flag. If set (1), assembly supports self refresh.
[6] Back-to-back random column addresses.
[7] Field format proposed to JEDEC but not defined as standard at publication time.
[8] Field specified as optional by JEDEC but required by this system.
[9] Compaq usage. This system requires that the DIMM EEPROM have this
    space available for reads/writes.
[10] Serial # in ASCII format (MSB is 133). Intended as backup identifier in case vender data is
    invalid.
    Can also be used to indicate s/n mismatch and flag system adminstrator of possible system
    Tampering.
[11] Contains the socket # of the module (first module is "1"). Intended as backup identifier (refer to
    note [10]).

Figure 3-4 shows the system memory map.

FFFF FFFFh	High BIOS Area (2 MB)	4 GB
FFE0 0000h		
FFDF FFFFh	PCI Memory (18 MB)	
FEC1 0000h		
FEC0 FFFFh	APIC Config. Space (64 KB)	
FEC0 0000h		
FEBF FFFFh	PCI Memory Expansion (3060 MB)	
2000 0000h		512 MB
1FFF FFFFh	Host/PCI Memory Expansion (496 MB)	
0100 0000h		16 MB
00FF FFFFh	Extended Memory (15 MB)	
0010 0000h		
000F FFFFh	System BIOS Area (64 KB)	1 MB
000F 0000h		
000E FFFFh	Extended BIOS Area (64 KB)	
000E 0000h		
000D FFFFh	Option ROM (128 KB)	
000C 0000h		
000B FFFFh	Graphics/SMRAM RAM (128 KB)	
000A 0000h		
0009 FFFFh	Fixed Mem. Area (128 KB)	640 KB
0008 0000h		512 KB
0007 FFFFh	Base Memory (512 KB)	
0000 0000h		

Areas (left margin labels): Host, PCI, AGP Area; Host, PCI, ISA Area; DOS Compatibility Area

NOTE: All locations in memory are cacheable. Base memory is always mapped to DRAM. The next 128 KB fixed memory area can, through the north bridge, be mapped to DRAM or to PCI space. Graphics RAM area is mapped to PCI or AGP locations.

Figure 3–4. System Memory Map

3.4   SUBSYSTEM CONFIGURATION

The 82815 GMCH component provides the configuration function for the processor/memory subsystem. Table 3-4 lists the configuration registers used for setting and checking such parameters as memory control and PCI bus operation. These registers reside in the PCI Configuration Space and accessed using the methods described in Chapter 4, section 4.2.

Table 3-4.
Host/PCI Bridge Configuration Registers (GMCH, Device 0)

PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00, 01h	Vender ID	8086h	6A, 6Bh	DRAM Control Reg.	00h
02, 03h	Device ID	1130h	6C..6Fh	Memory Buffer Strength	55h
04, 05h	Command	0006h	70h	Multi-Transaction Timer	00h
06, 07h	Status	[1]	71h	CPU Latency Timer	10h
08h	Revision ID	--	72h	SMRAM Control	02h
0A..0Bh	Class Code	--	90h	Error Command	00h
0Dh	Latency Timer	00h	91h	Error Status Register 0	00h
0Eh	Header Type	00h	92h	Error Status Register 1	00h
10..13h	Aperture Base Config.	[2]	93h	Reset Control	00h
50, 51h	PAC Config. Reg.	00h	A0..A3h	AGP Capability Identifier	N/A
53h	Data Buffer Control	83h	A4..A7h	AGP Status	N/A
55..56h	DRAM Row Type	00h	A8..ABh	AGP Command	00h
57h	DRAM Control	01h	B0..B3h	AGP Control	00h
58h	DRAM Timing	00h	B4h	Aperture Size	0000h
59..5Fh	PAM 0..6 Registers	00h	B8..BBh	Aperture Translation Table	0000h
60..67h	DRAM Row Boundary	01h	BCh	Aperture I/F Timer	00h
68h	Fixed DRAM Hole	00h	BDh	Low Priority Timer	00h

NOTES:

> Refer to Intel Inc. documentation for detailed description of registers.
> Assume unmarked locations/gaps as reserved.
> [1] = 0090h for AGP (external graphics) implementation; = 0080h for GFX (internal i740) implementation.
> [2] = 8 for AGP; = 0 for GFX.

Chapter 4
SYSTEM SUPPORT

4.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter covers subjects dealing with basic system architecture and covers the following topics:

This chapter covers functions provided by off-the-shelf chipsets and therefore describes only basic aspects of these functions as well as information unique to the systems covered in this guide. For detailed information on specific components, refer to the applicable manufacturer's documentation.

4.2   PCI BUS OVERVIEW

△   **NOTE:** This section describes the PCI bus in general and highlights bus implementation in this particular system. For detailed information regarding PCI bus operation, refer to the *PCI Local Bus Specification Revision 2.2*.

These systems implement a 32-bit Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) bus (spec. 2.2) operating at 33 MHz. The PCI bus handles address/data transfers through the identification of devices and functions on the bus. A device is typically defined as a component or slot that resides on the PCI bus (although some components such as the GMCH and ICH2 are organized as multiple devices). A function is defined as the end source or target of the bus transaction. A device may contain one or more functions.

In the standard configuration these systems use a hierarchy of three PCI buses (Figure 4-1). The PCI bus #0 is internal to the 815E chipset components and is not physically accessible. The AGP bus that services the AGP slot (or resident AGP controller on the Small Form Factor) is designated as PCI bus #1. All PCI slots and the NIC function internal to the 82801BA reside on PCI bus #2.
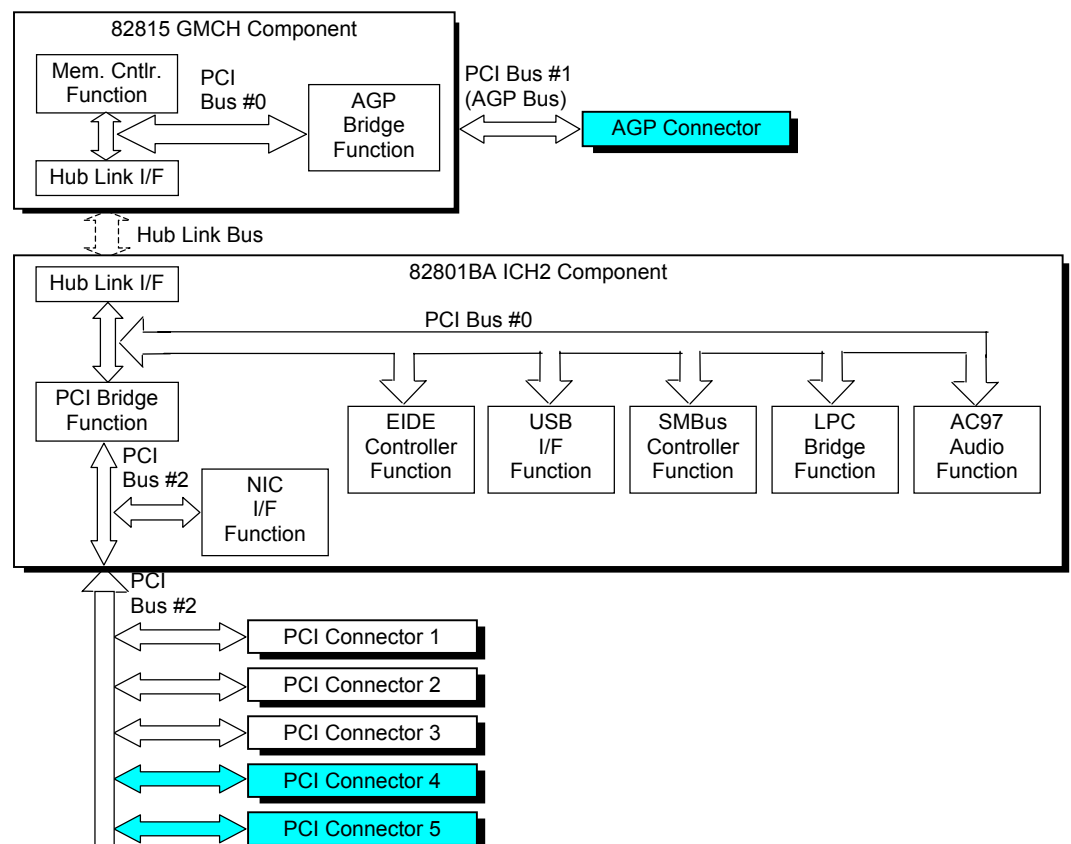
☐ Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower models only.

Figure 4-1. PCI Bus Devices and Functions

4.2.1 PCI BUS TRANSACTIONS

The PCI bus consists of a 32-bit path (AD31-00 lines) that uses a multiplexed scheme for handling both address and data transfers. A bus transaction consists of an address cycle and one or more data cycles, with each cycle requiring a clock (PCICLK) cycle. High performance is realized during burst modes in which a transaction with contiguous memory locations requires that only one address cycle be conducted and subsequent data cycles are completed using auto-incremented addressing. Four types of address cycles can take place on the PCI bus; I/O, memory, configuration, and special. Address decoding is distributed (left up to each device on the PCI bus).

4.2.1.1   I/O and Memory Cycles

For I/O and memory cycles, a standard 32-bit address decode (AD31..0) for byte-level addressing is handled by the appropriate PCI device. For memory addressing, PCI devices decode the AD31..2 lines for dword-level addressing and check the AD1,0 lines for burst (linear-incrementing) mode. In burst mode, subsequent data phases are conducted a dword at a time with addressing assumed to increment accordingly (four bytes at a time).

4.2.1.2   Configuration Cycles

Devices on the PCI bus must comply with PCI protocol that allows configuration of that device by software. In this system, configuration mechanism #1 (as described in the PCI Local Bus specification Rev. 2.1) is employed. This method uses two 32-bit registers for initiating a configuration cycle for accessing the configuration space of a PCI device. The configuration address register (CONFIG_ADDRESS) at 0CF8h holds a value that specifies the PCI bus, PCI device, and specific register to be accessed. The configuration data register (CONFIG_DATA) at 0CFCh contains the configuration data.

PCI Configuration Address Register
I/O Port 0CF8h, R/W, (32-bit access only)

Bit	Function
31	Configuration Enable 0 = Disabled 1 = Enable
30..24	Reserved - read/write 0s
23..16	Bus Number. Selects PCI bus
15..11	PCI Device Number. Selects PCI device for access
10..8	Function Number. Selects function of selected PCI device.
7..2	Register Index. Specifies config. reg.
1,0	Configuration Cycle Type ID. 00 = Type 0 01 = Type 1

PCI Configuration Data Register
I/O Port 0CFCh, R/W, (8-, 16-, 32-bit access)

Bit	Function
31..0	Configuration Data.

Two types of configuration cycles are used. A Type 0 (zero) cycle is targeted to a device on the PCI bus on which the cycle is running. A Type 1 cycle is targeted to a device on a downstream PCI bus as identified by bus number bits <23..16>. With three or more PCI buses, a PCI bridge may convert a Type 1 to a Type 0 if it's destined for a device being serviced by that bridge or it may forward the Type 1 cycle unmodified if it is destined for a device being serviced by a downstream bridge. Figure 4-2 shows the configuration cycle format and how the loading of 0CF8h results in a Type 0 configuration cycle on the PCI bus. The Device Number (bits <15..11> determines which one of the AD31..11 lines is to be asserted high for the IDSEL signal, which acts as a "chip select" function for the PCI device to be configured. The function number (CF8h, bits <10..8>) is used to select a particular function within a PCI component.
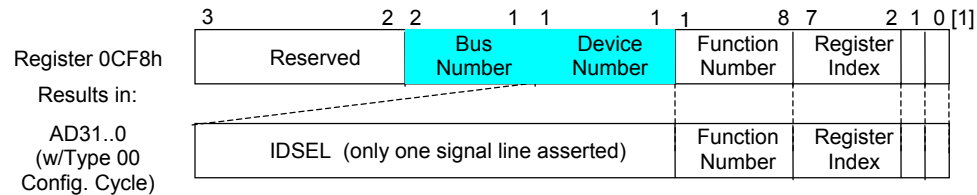
NOTES:

[1] Bits <1,0> : 00 = Type 0 Cycle, 01 = Type 1 cycle
▢ Type 01 cycle only. Reserved on Type 00 cycle.

Figure 4-2. Configuration Cycle

Table 4-1 shows the standard configuration of device numbers and IDSEL connections for components and slots residing on a PCI bus.

Table 4-1.
PCI Component Configuration Access

PCI Component	Notes	Function #	Device #	PCI Bus #	IDSEL Wired to:
82815 GMCH:					--
Memory Controller		0	0 (00h)	0	
AGP Bridge		0	1 (01h)	0	
Direct AGP Graphics Cntlr.		0	2 (02h)	0	
AGP slot	[3]	0	0 (00h)	1	--
82801BA ICH2:					--
PCI Bridge		0	30 (1Eh)	0	
LPC Bridge		0	31 (1Fh)	0	
EIDE Controller		1	31 (1Fh)	0	
USB I/F #1	[1]	2	31 (1Fh)	0	
SMBus Controller		3	31 (1Fh)	0	
USB I/F #2		4	31 (1Fh)	0	
AC97 Audio Controller		5	31 (1Fh)	0	
AC97 Modem Controller	[1]	6	31 (1Fh)	0	
Network Interface Controller		0	8 (08h)	2	
PCI Connector 1 (slot 1)	[2]	0	4 (04h)	2	AD24
PCI Connector 2 (slot 2)	[2]	0	9 (09h)	2	AD25
PCI Connector 3 (slot 3)	[2]	0	10 (0Ah)	2	AD26
PCI Connector 4 (slot 4)	[2,3]	0	11 (0Bh)	2	AD27
PCI Connector 5 (slot 5)	[2,3]	0	13 (0Dh)	2	AD29

NOTES:

[1] Not implemented.
[2] PCI bus number given is for standard configuration.
[3] Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower models only.

The register index (CF8h, bits <7..2>) identifies the 32-bit location within the configuration space of the PCI device to be accessed. All PCI devices can contain up to 256 bytes of configuration data (Figure 4-3), of which the first 64 bytes comprise the configuration space header.
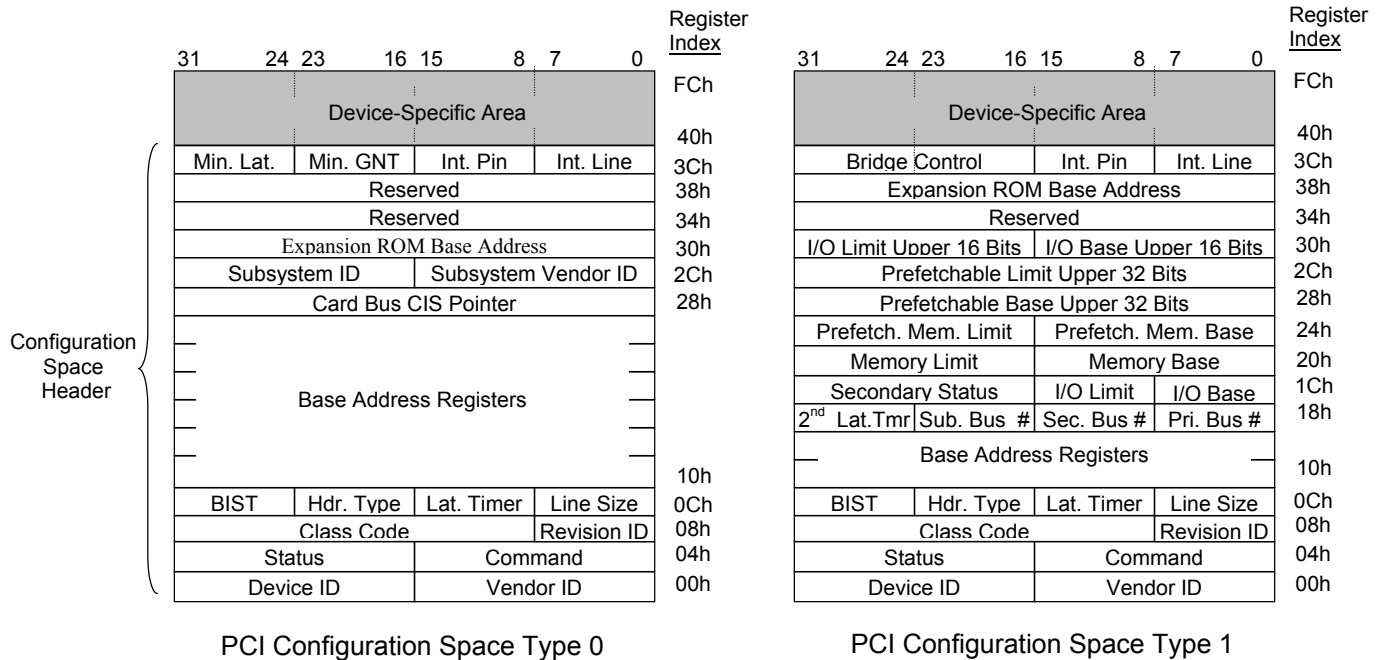
Figure 4-3. PCI Configuration Space Mapping

Each PCI device is identified with a vendor ID (assigned to the vendor by the PCI Special Interest Group) and a device ID (assigned by the vendor). The device and vendor IDs for the devices on the system board are listed in Table 4-2.

Table 4-2.
System Board PCI Device Identification

PCI Device	Vendor ID	Device ID
82815 GMCH:		
Memory Controller	8086h	1130h
AGP Bridge	8086h	1131h
Direct AGP Controller	8086h	1132h
82801 ICH2:		
PCI Bridge	8086h	244Eh
LPC Bridge	8086h	2440h
EIDE Controller	8086h	244Bh
USB I/F #2	8086h	2444h
SMBus Controller	8086h	(Hidden)
AC97 Audio Controller	8086h	2445h
Network Interface Controller	8086h	2449h

4.2.2 PCI BUS MASTER ARBITRATION

The PCI bus supports a bus master/target arbitration scheme. A bus master is a device that has been granted control of the bus for the purpose of initiating a transaction. A target is a device that is the recipient of a transaction. The Request (REQ), Grant (GNT), and FRAME signals are used by PCI bus masters for gaining access to the PCI bus. When a PCI device needs access to the PCI bus (and does not already own it), the PCI device asserts it's REQ*n* signal to the PCI bus arbiter (a function of the system controller component). If the bus is available, the arbiter asserts the GNT*n* signal to the requesting device, which then asserts FRAME and conducts the address phase of the transaction with a target. If the PCI device already owns the bus, a request is not needed and the device can simply assert FRAME and conduct the transaction. Table 4-3 shows the grant and request signals assignments for the devices on the PCI bus.

Table 4-3.
PCI Bus Mastering Devices

REQ/GNT Line	Device
REQ0/GNT0	PCI Connector Slot 1
REQ1/GNT1	PCI Connector Slot 2
REQ2/GNT2	PCI Connector Slot 3
REQ3/GNT3	PCI Connector Slot 4 [1]
REQ4/GNT4	PCI Connector Slot 5 [1]
GREQ/GGNT	AGP Slot [1]

NOTE:

[1] Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower models only.

PCI bus arbitration is based on a round-robin scheme that complies with the fairness algorithm specified by the PCI specification. The bus parking policy allows for the current PCI bus owner (excepting the PCI/ISA bridge) to maintain ownership of the bus as long as no request is asserted by another agent. Note that most CPU-to-DRAM and AGP-to-DRAM accesses can occur concurrently with PCI traffic, therefore reducing the need for the Host/PCI bridge to compete for PCI bus ownership.

4.2.3 OPTION ROM MAPPING

During POST, the PCI bus is scanned for devices that contain their own specific firmware in ROM. Such option ROM data, if detected, is loaded into system memory's DOS compatibility area (refer to the system memory map shown in chapter 3).

4.2.4 PCI INTERRUPTS

Eight interrupt signals (INTA- thru INTH-) are available for use by PCI devices. These signals may be generated by on-board PCI devices or by devices installed in the PCI slots. For more information on interrupts including PCI interrupt mapping refer to the "System Resources" section 4.4.

4.2.5 PCI POWER MANAGEMENT SUPPORT

This system complies with the PCI Power Management Interface Specification (rev 1.0). The PCI Power Management Enable (PME-) signal is supported by the chipset and allows compliant PCI and AGP peripherals to initiate the power management routine.

4.2.6 PCI SUB-BUSSES

The chipset implements two data busses that are supplementary in operation to the PCI bus:

4.2.6.1 Hub Link Bus

The chipset implements a Hub Link bus between the GMCH and the ICH2. This bus is transparent to software and is not accessible for expansion purposes.

4.2.6.2 LPC Bus

The 82801 ICH2 implements a Low Pin Count (LPC) bus for handling transactions to and from the 47B357 Super I/O Controller as well as the 82802 Firmware Hub (FWH). The LPC bus transfers data a nibble (4 bits) at a time at a 33-MHz rate. Generally transparent in operation, the only consideration required of the LPC bus is during the configuration of DMA channel modes (see section 4.4.3 "DMA").

4.2.7 PCI CONFIGURATION

PCI bus operations require the configuration of certain parameters such as PCI IRQ routing, DMA channel configuration, RTC control, port decode ranges, and power management options. These parameters are handled by the LPC I/F bridge function (PCI function #0, device 31) of the ICH2 component and configured through the PCI configuration space registers listed in Table 4-4. Configuration is provided by BIOS at power-up but re-configurable by software.

Table 4-4.
LPC Bridge Configuration Registers
(ICH2, Function 0, Device 31)

PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00, 01h	Vendor ID	8086h	8Ah	Device 31 Error Status	00h
02, 03h	Device ID	2440h	90, 91h	PCI DMA Configuration	0000h
04, 05h	Command	000Fh	A0-CFh	Power Management	
06, 07h	Status	0280h	D0-D3h	General Control	0's
08h	Revision ID	00h	D4-D7h	General Status	F00h
0A-0Bh	Class Code	0106h	D8h	RTC Configuration	00h
0Eh	Header Type	80h	E0h	LPC COM Port Dec. Range	00h
40-43h	ACPI Base Address	1	E1h	LPC FDD & LPT Dec. Rge	00h
44h	ACPI Control	00h	E2h	LPC Audio Dec. Range	80h
4E, 4Fh	BIOS Control	0000h	E3h	FWH Decode Enable	FFh
54h	TCO Control	00h	E4, E5h	LPC I/F Decode Range 1	0000h
58-5Bh	GPIO Base Address	1	E6, E7h	LPC I/F Enables	0000h
5Ch	GPIO Control	00h	E8-EBh	FWH Select 1	00112233
60-63h	INTA-D Routing Cntrl.	80h [1]	EC, EDh	LPC I/F Decode Range 2	0000h
64h	Serial IRQ Control	10h	EE, EFh	FWH Select 2	5678h
68-6B	INTE-F Routing Cntrl.	80h [1]	F0h	FWH Decode Enable 2	0Fh
88h	Dev. 31 Error Config.	00h	F2h	Function Disable Register	00h

NOTE:

[1] Value for each byte.
Assume unmarked locations/gaps as reserved.

4.2.8 PCI CONNECTOR
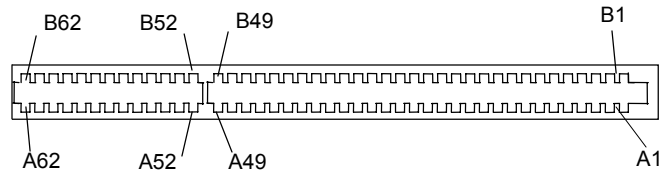
Figure 4-4. PCI Bus Connector (32-Bit Type)

Table 4-5.
PCI Bus Connector Pinout

Pin	B Signal	A Signal	Pin	B Signal	A Signal
01	-12 VDC	TRST-	32	AD17	AD16
02	TCK	+12 VDC	33	C/BE2-	+3.3 VDC
03	GND	TMS	34	GND	FRAME-
04	TDO	TDI	35	IRDY-	GND
05	+5 VDC	+5 VDC	36	+3.3 VDC	TRDY-
06	+5 VDC	INTA-	37	DEVSEL-	GND
07	INTB-	INTC-	38	GND	STOP-
08	INTD-	+5 VDC	39	LOCK-	+3.3 VDC
09	PRSNT1-	Reserved	40	PERR-	SDONE n
10	RSVD	+5 VDC	41	+3.3 VDC	SBO-
11	PRSNT2-	Reserved	42	SERR-	GND
12	GND	GND	43	+3.3 VDC	PAR
13	GND	GND	44	C/BE1-	AD15
14	RSVD	+3.3 AUX	45	AD14	+3.3 VDC
15	GND	RST-	46	GND	AD13
16	CLK	+5 VDC	47	AD12	AD11
17	GND	GNT-	48	AD10	GND
18	REQ-	GND	49	GND	AD09
19	+5 VDC	PME-	50	Key	Key
20	AD31	AD30	51	Key	Key
21	AD29	+3.3 VDC	52	AD08	C/BE0-
22	GND	AD28	53	AD07	+3.3 VDC
23	AD27	AD26	54	+3.3 VDC	AD06
24	AD25	GND	55	AD05	AD04
25	+3.3 VDC	AD24	56	AD03	GND
26	C/BE3-	IDSEL	57	GND	AD02
27	AD23	+3.3 VDC	58	AD01	AD00
28	GND	AD22	59	+5 VDC	+5 VDC
29	AD21	AD20	60	ACK64-	REQ64-
30	AD19	GND	61	+5 VDC	+5 VDC
31	+3.3 VDC	AD18	62	+5 VDC	+5 VDC
--	--	--	--	--	--

4.3   AGP BUS OVERVIEW

△   **NOTE:** The Small Form Factor system features an on-board AGP graphics adapter and does not provide an accessible AGP slot. All Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems provide an AGP slot and may implement either an on-board AGP graphics adapter with a GPA/AIMM card or separate AGP graphics card. For a detailed description of AGP bus operations refer to the *AGP Interface Specification Rev. 2.0* available at the following AGP forum web site: http://www.agpforum.org/index.htm

The Accelerated Graphics Port (AGP) bus is specifically designed as an economical yet high-performance interface for graphics adapters, especially those designed for 3D operations. The AGP interface is designed to give graphics adapters dedicated pipelined access to system memory for the purpose of off-loading texturing, z-buffering, and alpha blending used in 3D graphics operations. By off-loading a large portion of 3D data to system memory the AGP graphics adapter only requires enough memory for frame buffer (display image) refreshing.

4.3.1 BUS TRANSACTIONS

The operation of the AGP bus is based on the 66-MHz PCI specification but includes additional mechanisms to increase bandwidth. During the configuration phase the AGP bus acts in accordance with PCI protocol. Once graphics data handling operation is initiated, AGP-defined protocols take effect. The AGP graphics adapter acts generally as the AGP master, but can also behave as a "PCI" target during fast writes from the GMCH or MCH.

Key differences between the AGP interface and the PCI interface are as follows:

♦   Address phase and associated data transfer phase are disconnected transactions. Addressing and data transferring occur as contiguous actions on the PCI bus. On the AGP bus a request for data and the transfer of data may be separated by other operations.
♦   Commands on the AGP bus specify system memory accesses only. Unlike the PCI bus, commands involving I/O and configuration are not required or allowed. The system memory address space used in AGP operations is the same linear space used by PCI memory space commands, but is further specified by the graphics address re-mapping table (GART) of the north bridge component.
♦   Data transactions on the AGP bus involve eight bytes or multiples of eight bytes. The AGP memory addressing protocol uses 8-byte boundaries as opposed to PCI's 4-byte boundaries. If a transfer of less than eight bytes is needed, the remaining bytes are filled with arbitrary data that is discarded by the target.
♦   Pipelined requests are defined by length or size on the AGP bus. The PCI bus defines transfer lengths with the FRAME- signal.

There are two basic types of transactions on the AGP bus: data requests (addressing) and data transfers. These actions are separate from each other.

4.3.1.1   Data Request

Requesting data is accomplished in one of two ways; either multiplexed addressing (using the AD lines for addressing/data) or demultiplexed ("sideband") addressing (using the SBA lines for addressing only and the AD lines for data only). Even though there are only eight SBA lines (as opposed to the 32 AD lines) sideband addressing maximizes efficiency and throughput by allowing the AD lines to be exclusively used for data transfers. Sideband addressing occurs at the same rate (1X, 2X, or 4X) as data transfers. The differences in rates will be discussed in the next section describing data transfers. Note also that sideband addressing is limited to 48 bits (address bits 48-63 are assumed zero). The GMCH component supports both SBA and AD addressing , but the method and rate is selected by the AGP graphics adapter.

4.3.1.2   Data Transfers

Data transfers use the AD lines and occur as the result of data requests described previously. Each transaction resulting from a request involves at least eight bytes, requiring the 32 AD lines to handle at least two transfers per request. The 82815E GMCH supports three transfer rates: 1X, 2X, and 4X. Regardless of the rate used, the speed of the bus clock is constant at 66 MHz. The following subsections describe how the use of additional strobe signals makes possible higher transfer rates.

AGP 1X Transfers

During a AGP 1X transfer the 66-MHz CLK signal is used to qualify the control and data signals. Each 4-byte data transfer is synchronous with one CLK cycle so it takes two CLK cycles for a minimum 8-byte transfer (Figure 4-5 shows two 8-byte transfers). The GNT- and TRDY- signals retain their traditional PCI functions. The ST0..3 signals are used for priority encoding, with "000" for low priority and "001" indicating high priority. The signal level for AGP 1X transfers may be 3.3 or 1.5 VDC.
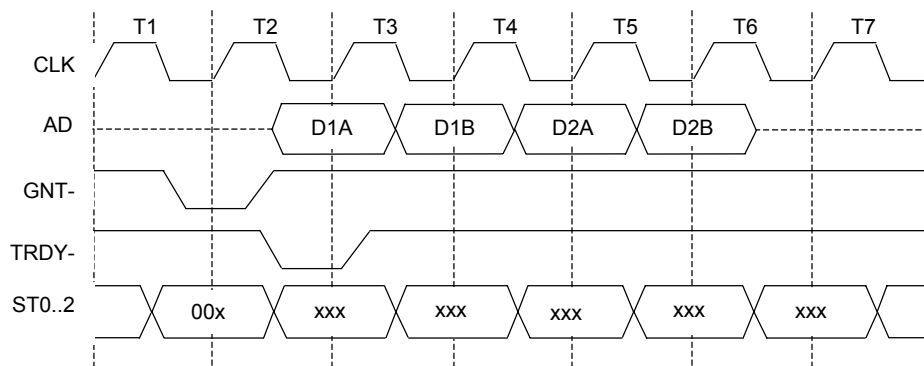
Figure 4-5. AGP 1X Data Transfer (Peak Transfer Rate: 266 MB/s)

AGP 2X Transfers

During AGP 2X transfers, clocking is basically the same as in 1X transfers except that the 66-MHz CLK signal is used to qualify only the control signals. The data bytes are latched by an additional strobe (AD_STBx) signal so that an 8-byte transfer occurs in one CLK cycle (Figure 4-6). The first four bytes (DnA) are latched by the receiving agent on the falling edge of AD_STBx and the second four bytes (DnB) are latched on the rising edge of AD_STBx. The signal level for AGP 2X transfers may be 3.3 or 1.5 VDC.
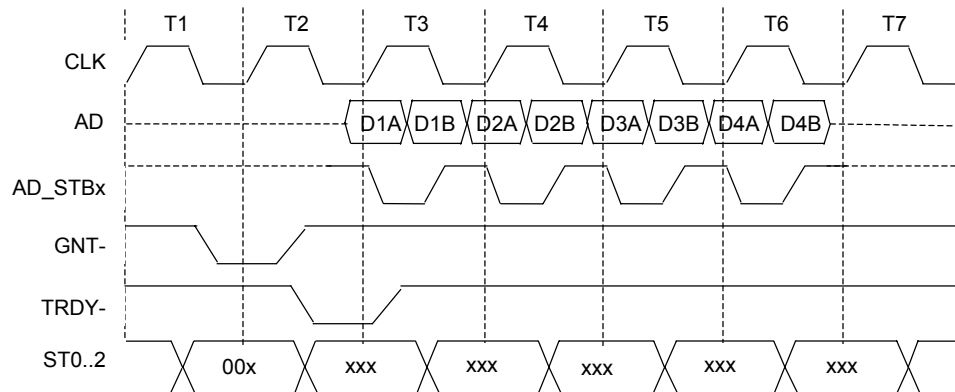
Figure 4-6. AGP 2X Data Transfer (Peak Transfer Rate: 532 MB/s)

AGP 4X Transfers

The AGP 4X transfer rate allows sixteen bytes of data to be transferred in one clock cycle. As in 2X transfers the 66-MHz CLK signal is used only for qualifying control signals while strobe signals are used to latch each 4-byte transfer on the AD lines. As shown in Figure 4-7, 4-byte block DnA is latched by the falling edge of AD_STBx while DnB is latched by the falling edge of AD_STBx-. The signal level for AGP 4X transfers is 1.5 VDC.
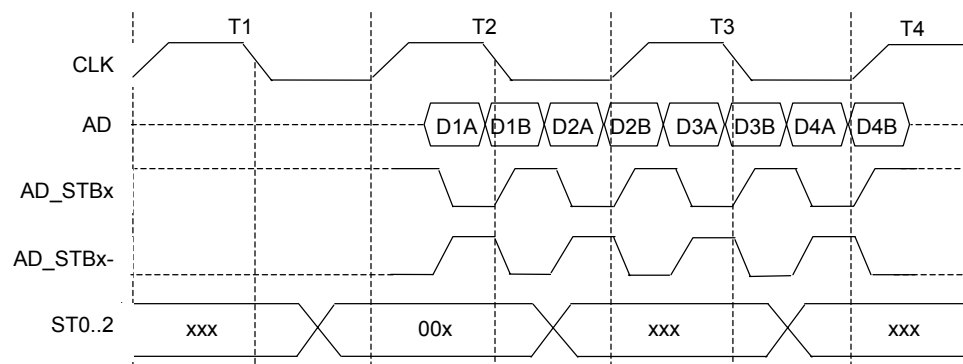
Figure 4-7. AGP 4X Data Transfer (Peak Transfer Rate: 1064 MB/s)

4.3.2 AGP CONFIGURATION

AGP bus operations require the configuration of certain parameters involving system memory access by the AGP graphics adapter. The AGP bus interface is configured as a PCI device integrated within the north bridge (GMCH, device 1) component. The AGP function is, from the PCI bus perspective, treated essentially as a PCI/PCI bridge and configured through PCI configuration registers (Table 4-6). Configuration is accomplished by BIOS during POST.

> **NOTE:** Configuration of the AGP bus interface involves functions 0 and 1 of the GMCH. Function 0 registers (listed in Table 3-4) include functions that affect basic control (GART) of the AGP.

Table 4-6.
PCI/AGP Bridge Function Configuration Registers (GMCH, Function 1)

PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00, 01h	Vendor ID	8086h	1Bh	Sec. Master Latency Timer	00h
02, 03h	Device ID	1131h	1Ch	I/O Base Address	F0h
04, 05h	Command	0000h	1Dh	I/O Limit Address	00h
06, 07h	Status	0020h	1E, 1Fh	Sec. PCI/PCI Status	02A0h
08h	Revision ID	00h	20, 21h	Memory Base Address	FFF0h
0A, 0Bh	Class Code	0406h	22, 23h	Memory Limit Address	0000h
0Eh	Header Type	01h	24, 25h	Prefetch Mem. Base Addr.	FFF0h
18h	Primary Bus Number	00h	26, 27h	Prefetch Mem. Limit Addr.	0000h
19h	Secondary Bus Number	00h	3Eh	PCI/PCI Bridge Control	00h
1Ah	Subordinate Bus Number	00h	3F-FFh	Reserved	00h

NOTE:

> Assume unmarked locations/gaps as reserved. Refer to Intel documentation for detailed register descriptions.

The AGP graphics adapter (actually its resident controller) is configured as a standard PCI device.

4.3.3 AGP CONNECTOR
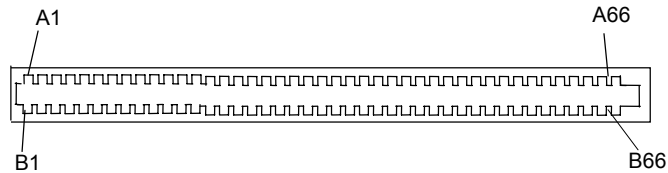
Figure 4-8. Universal AGP Bus Connector

Table 4-7.
AGP Bus Connector Pinout

Pin	A Signal	B Signal	Pin	A Signal	B Signal	Pin	A Signal	B Signal
01	+12 VDC	OVRCNT-	23	GND	GND	45	VDD3	VDD3
02	Type Det-	VDD	24	NC	VDD3 Aux	46	TRDY-	DEVSEL-
03	NC	VDD	25	VDD3	VDD3	47	STOP-	VDDQ
04	USBN	USBP	26	PAD30	PAD31	48	PME-	PERR-
05	GND	GND	27	PAD28	PAD29	49	GND	GND
06	INTA-	INTB-	28	VDD3	VDD3	50	PAR	SERR-
07	RESET	CLK	29	PAD26	PAD27	51	PAD15	CBE1-
08	GNT-	REQ-	30	PAD24	PAD25	52	VDDQ	VDDQ
09	VDD3	VDD3	31	GND	GND	53	PAD13	PAD14
10	ST1	ST0	32	AD_STB1-	AD_STB1	54	PAD11	PAD12
11	NC	ST2	33	CBE3-	PAD23	55	GND	GND
12	PIPE-	RBF-	34	VDDQ	VDDQ	56	PAD09	PAD10
13	GND	GND	35	PAD22	PAD21	57	CBE0-	PAD08
14	WBF-	NC	36	PAD20	PAD19	58	VDDQ	VDDQ
15	SBA1	SBA0	37	GND	GND	59	AD_STB0-	AD_STB0
16	VDD3	VDD3	38	PAD18	PAD17	60	PAD06	PAD07
17	SBA3	SBA2	39	PAD16	CBE2-	61	GND	GND
18	SB_STB-	SB_STB	40	VDDQ	VDDQ	62	PAD04	PAD05
19	GND	GND	41	FRAME-	IRDY-	63	PAD02	PAD03
20	SBA5	SBA4	42	NC	VDD3 Aux	64	VDDQ	VDDQ
21	SBA7	DBA6	43	GND	GND	65	PAD00	PAD01
22	NC	NC	44	NC	NC	66	VREFGC	VREFCG

NOTES:
    NC = Not connected
    VDDQ = 3.3 VDC when TYPE DET- is left open by AGP 1X/2X card.
    VDDQ = 1.5 VDC when TYPE DET- is grounded by AGP 4X card.

4.4   SYSTEM RESOURCES

This section describes the availability and basic control of major subsystems, otherwise known as resource allocation or simply "system resources." System resources are provided on a priority basis through hardware interrupts and DMA requests and grants.

4.4.1 INTERRUPTS

The microprocessor uses two types of hardware interrupts; maskable and nonmaskable. A maskable interrupt can be enabled or disabled within the microprocessor by the use of the STI and CLI instructions.   A nonmaskable interrupt cannot be masked off within the microprocessor, although it may be inhibited by hardware or software means external to the microprocessor.

4.4.1.1   Maskable Interrupts

The maskable interrupt is a hardware-generated signal used by peripheral functions within the system to get the attention of the microprocessor. Peripheral functions produce a unique INTA-H (PCI) or IRQ0-15 (ISA) signal that is routed to interrupt processing logic that asserts the interrupt (INTR-) input to the microprocessor. The microprocessor halts execution to determine the source of the interrupt and then services the peripheral as appropriate.

Figure 4-9 shows the routing of PCI and ISA interrupts. Most IRQs are routed through the I/O controller, which contains a serializing function. A serialized interrupt stream is applied to the 82801 ICH2.
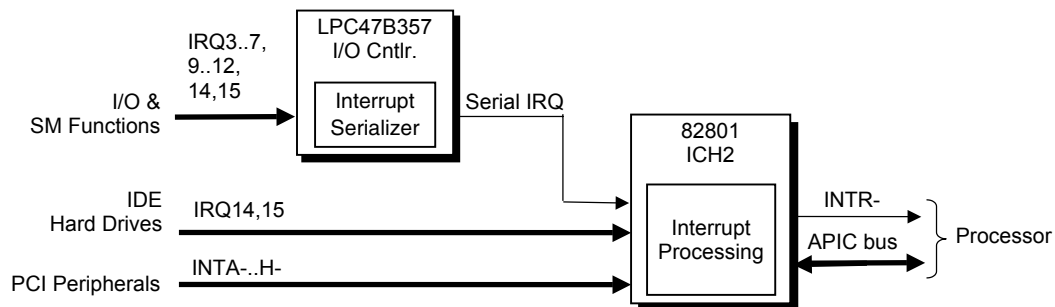
Figure 4-9. Maskable Interrupt Processing, Block Diagram

Interrupts may be processed in one of two modes (selectable through the F10 Setup utility):

♦   8259 mode
♦   APIC mode

8259 Mode

The 8259 mode handles interrupts IRQ0-IRQ15 in the legacy (AT-system) method using 8259-equivalent logic. Table 4-8 lists the standard source configuration for maskable interrupts and their priorities in 8259 mode. If more than one interrupt is pending, the highest priority (lowest number) is processed first.

Table 4-8.
Maskable Interrupt Priorities and Assignments

Priority	Signal Label	Source (Typical)
1	IRQ0	Interval timer 1, counter 0
2	IRQ1	Keyboard
3	IRQ8-	Real-time clock
4	IRQ9	Unused
5	IRQ10	Unused
6	IRQ11	Unused
7	IRQ12	Mouse
8	IRQ13	Coprocessor (math)
9	IRQ14	IDE primary I/F
10	IRQ15	IDE secondary I/F
11	IRQ3	Serial port (COM2)
12	IRQ4	Serial port (COM1)
13	IRQ5	Unused
14	IRQ6	Diskette drive controller
15	IRQ7	Parallel port (LPT1)
--	IRQ2	NOT AVAILABLE (Cascade from interrupt controller 2)

APIC Mode

The Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) mode provides enhanced interrupt processing with the following advantages:

♦ Eliminates the processor's interrupt acknowledge cycle by using a separate (APIC) bus
♦ Programmable interrupt priority
♦ Additional interrupts (total of 24)

The APIC mode accommodates eight PCI interrupt signals (INTA-..INTH-) for use by PCI devices. The PCI interrupts are evenly distributed to minimize latency and wired as follows:

ICH2 Int. Cntlr.		PCI Slot 1	PCI Slot 2	PCI Slot 3	PCI Slot 4	PCI Slot 5	AGP Slot	NIC I/F [1]	USB I/F #2	Direct AGP Cntlr. [2]
INTA-		INTA-	INTD-	INTC-	INTB-	INTD-	--	--	--	INTA-
INTB-		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	INTB-
INTC-	Wired	INTB-	INTA-	INTD-	INTC-	INTA-	INTA-	--	--	--
INTD-	to	--	--	--	--	--	INTB-	--	--	--
INTE-		--	--	--	--	---	--	INTA-	--	--
INTF-		INTC-	INTB-	INTA-	INTD-	INTB-	--	--	--	--
INTG-		INTD-	INTC-	INTB-	INTA-	INTC-	--	--	--	--
INTH-		--	--	--	--	--	--	--	INTC-	--

NOTES:
[1] Connection internal to the ICH2. Will be reported by BIOS as using INTA but is NOT shared with other functions using INTA.
[2] Internal graphics controller of the 82815 GMCH, internally wired.
▢ Deskpro SDT and CMT systems only.

The PCI interrupts can be configured by PCI Configuration Registers 60h..63h to share the standard ISA interrupts (IRQn).

⚠ **NOTE:** The APIC mode is supported by the Windows NT and Windows 2000 operating systems. Systems running the Windows 95 or 98 operating system will need to run in 8259 mode.

Maskable Interrupt processing is controlled and monitored through standard AT-type I/O-mapped registers. These registers are listed in Table 4-9.

Table 4-9.
Maskable Interrupt Control Registers

I/O Port	Register
020h	Base Address, Int. Cntlr. 1
021h	Initialization Command Word 2-4, Int. Cntlr. 1
0A0h	Base Address, Int. Cntlr. 2
0A1h	Initialization Command Word 2-4, Int. Cntlr. 2

The initialization and operation of the interrupt control registers follows standard AT-type protocol.

4.4.1.2 Non-Maskable Interrupts

Non-maskable interrupts cannot be masked (inhibited) within the microprocessor itself but may be maskable by software using logic external to the microprocessor. There are two non-maskable interrupt signals: the NMI- and the SMI-. These signals have service priority over all maskable interrupts, with the SMI- having top priority over all interrupts including the NMI-.

NMI- Generation

The Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI-) signal can be generated by one of the following actions:

♦ Parity errors detected on a PCI bus (activating SERR- or PERR-).
♦ Microprocessor internal error (activating IERRA or IERRB)

The SERR- and PERR- signals are routed through the ICH2 component, which in turn activates the NMI to the microprocessor.

The NMI Status Register at I/O port 061h contains NMI source and status data as follows:

NMI Status Register 61h

Bit	Function
7	NMI Status: 0 = No NMI from system board parity error. 1 = NMI requested, read only
6	IOCHK- NMI: 0 = No NMI from IOCHK- 1 = IOCHK- is active (low), NMI requested, read only
5	Interval Timer 1, Counter 2 (Speaker) Status
4	Refresh Indicator (toggles with every refresh)
3	IOCHK- NMI Enable/Disable: 0 = NMI from IOCHK- enabled 1 = NMI from IOCHK- disabled and cleared (R/W)
2	System Board Parity Error (PERR/SERR) NMI Enable: 0 = Parity error NMI enabled 1 = Parity error NMI disabled and cleared (R/W)
1	Speaker Data (R/W)
0	Inteval Timer 1, Counter 2 Gate Signal (R/W) 0 = Counter 2 disabled 1 = Counter 2 enabled

▢ Functions not related to NMI activity.

After the active NMI has been processed, status bits <7> or <6> are cleared by pulsing bits <2> or <3> respectively.

The NMI Enable Register (070h, <7>) is used to enable/disable the NMI signal. Writing 80h to this register masks generation of the NMI-. Note that the lower six bits of register at I/O port 70h affect RTC operation and should be considered when changing NMI- generation status.

SMI- Generation

The SMI- (System Management Interrupt) is typically used for power management functions. When power management is enabled, inactivity timers are monitored. When a timer times out, SMI- is asserted and invokes the microprocessor's SMI handler. The SMI- handler works with the APM BIOS to service the SMI- according to the cause of the timeout.

Although the SMI- is primarily used for power managment the interrupt is also employed for the QuickLock/QuickBlank functions as well.

4.4.2 DIRECT MEMORY ACCESS

Direct Memory Access (DMA) is a method by which a device accesses system memory without involving the microprocessor. Although the DMA method has been traditionally used to transfer blocks of data to or from an ISA I/O device, PCI devices may also use DMA operation as well. The DMA method reduces the amount of CPU interactions with memory, freeing the CPU for other processing tasks.

> ⚠ **NOTE:** This section describes DMA in general. For detailed information regarding DMA operation, refer to the data manual for the Intel 82801BA I/O Controller Hub.

The 82801 ICH2 component includes the equivalent of two 8237 DMA controllers cascaded together to provide eight DMA channels, each (excepting channel 4) configurable to a specific device. Table 4-10 lists the default configuration of the DMA channels.

Table 4-10.
Default DMA Channel Assignments

DMA Channel	Device ID
Controller 1 (byte transfers)	
0	Spare
1	Audio subsystem
2	Diskette drive
3	ECP LPT1
Controller 2 (word transfers)	
4	Cascade for controller 1
5	Spare
6	Spare
7	Spare

All channels in DMA controller 1 operate at a higher priority than those in controller 2. Note that channel 4 is not available for use other than its cascading function for controller 1. The DMA controller 2 can transfer words only on an even address boundary. The DMA controller and page register define a 24-bit address that allows data transfers within the address space of the CPU.

In addition to device configuration, each channel can be configured (through PCI Configuration Registers) for one of two modes of operation:

♦   LPC DMA
♦   PC/PCI DMA

The LPC DMA mode uses the LPC bus to communicate DMA channel control and is implemented for devices using DMA through the LPC47B357 I/O controller such as the diskette drive controller.

The PC/PCI DMA mode uses the REQ#/GNT# signals to communicate DMA channel control and is used by PCI expansion devices.

The DMA logic is accessed through two types of I/O mapped registers; page registers and controller registers.

4.4.2.1   DMA Page Registers

The DMA page register contains the eight most significant bits of the 24-bit address and works in conjunction with the DMA controllers to define the complete (24-bit)address for the DMA channels. Table 4-11 lists the page register port addresses.

Table 4-11.
DMA Page Register Addresses

DMA Channel	Page Register I/O Port
Controller 1 (byte transfers)	
Ch 0	087h
Ch 1	083h
Ch 2	081h
Ch 3	082h
Controller 2 (word transfers)	
Ch 4	n/a
Ch 5	08Bh
Ch 6	089h
Ch 7	08Ah
Refresh	08Fh [see note]

NOTE:
> The DMA memory page register for the refresh channel must be
> programmed with 00h for proper operation.

The memory address is derived as follows:

24-Bit Address - Controller 1 (Byte Transfers)
8-Bit Page Register   8-Bit DMA Controller
A23..A16   A15..A00

24-Bit Address - Controller 2 (Word Transfers)
8-Bit Page Register   16-Bit DMA Controller
A23..A17   A16..A01, (A00 = 0)

Note that address line A16 from the DMA memory page register is disabled when DMA controller 2 is selected. Address line A00 is not connected to DMA controller 2 and is always 0 when word-length transfers are selected.

By not connecting A00, the following applies:

♦   The size of the the block of data that can be moved or addressed is measured in 16-bits (words) rather than 8-bits (bytes).
♦   The words must always be addressed on an even boundary.

DMA controller 1 can move up to 64 Kbytes of data per DMA transfer. DMA controller 2 can move up to 64 Kwords (128 Kbytes) of data per DMA transfer. Word DMA operations are only possible between 16-bit memory and 16-bit peripherals.

The RAM refresh is designed to perform a memory read cycle on each of the 512 row addresses in the DRAM memory space. Refresh operations are used to refresh memory on the 32-bit memory bus and the ISA bus. The refresh address is provided on lines SA00 through SA08. Address lines LA23..17, SA18,19 are driven low.

The remaining address lines are in an undefined state during the refresh cycle. The refresh operations are driven by a 69.799-KHz clock generated by Interval Timer 1, Counter 1. The refresh rate is 128 refresh cycles in 2.038 ms.

4.4.2.2   DMA Controller Registers

Table 4-12 lists the DMA Controller Registers and their I/O port addresses. Note that there is a set of registers for each DMA controller.

Table 4-12.
DMA Controller Registers

Register	Controller 1	Controller 2	R/W
Status	008h	0D0h	R
Command	008h	0D0h	W
Mode	00Bh	0D6h	W
Write Single Mask Bit	00Ah	0D4h	W
Write All Mask Bits	00Fh	0DEh	W
Software DRQx Request	009h	0D2h	W
Base and Current Address - Ch 0	000h	0C0h	W
Current Address - Ch 0	000h	0C0h	R
Base and Current Word Count - Ch 0	001h	0C2h	W
Current Word Count - Ch 0	001h	0C2h	R
Base and Current Address - Ch 1	002h	0C4h	W
Current Address - Ch 1	002h	0C4h	R
Base and Current Word Count - Ch 1	003h	0C6h	W
Current Word Count - Ch 1	003h	0C6h	R
Base and Current Address - Ch 2	004h	0C8h	W
Current Address - Ch 2	004h	0C8h	R
Base and Current Word Count - Ch 2	005h	0CAh	W
Current Word Count - Ch 2	005h	0CAh	R
Base and Current Address - Ch 3	006h	0CCh	W
Current Address - Ch 3	006h	0CCh	R
Base and Current Word Count - Ch 3	007h	0CEh	W
Current Word Count - Ch 3	007h	0CEh	R
Temporary (Command)	00Dh	0DAh	R
Reset Pointer Flip-Flop (Command)	00Ch	0D8h	W
Master Reset (Command)	00Dh	0DAh	W
Reset Mask Register (Command)	00Eh	0DCh	W

4.5   SYSTEM CLOCK DISTRIBUTION

These systems use an Intel CK-type clock generator and crystal for generating the clock signals required by the system board components. Table 4-13 lists the system board clock signals and how they are distributed.

Table 4-13.
Clock Generation and Distribution

Frequncy	Source	Destination
66, 100, or 133 MHz	CK	Processor, GMCH
100 or 133 MHz	CK	DIMM sockets
66 MHz	CK	ICH2, AGP Graphics Cntlr. [1]
48 MHz	CK	ICH2, I/O Cntlr.
33 MHz	CK	Processor, ICH2, PCI Slots
14.31818 MHz	Crystal	CK

NOTES:

[1] Routed to on-board controller on Deslpro EN SFF.
Routed to AGP slot on Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower.

Certain clock outputs are turned off during reduced power modes to conserve energy. Clock output control is handled through the SMBus interface by BIOS.

4.6 REAL-TIME CLOCK AND CONFIGURATION MEMORY

The Real-time clock (RTC) and configuration memory (also referred to as "CMOS") functions are provided by the 82801 ICH2 component and is MC146818-compatible. As shown in the following figure, the 82801 ICH2 component provides 256 bytes of battery-backed RAM divided into two 128-byte configuration memory areas. The RTC uses the first 14 bytes (00-0Dh) of the standard memory area. All locations of the standard memory area (00-7Fh) can be directly accessed using conventional OUT and IN assembly language instructions through I/O ports 70h/71h, although the suggested method is to use the INT15 AX=E823h BIOS call.

0Dh	Register D
0Ch	Register C
0Bh	Register B
0Ah	Register A
09h	Year
08h	Month
07h	Date of Month
06h	Day of Week
05h	Hours (Alarm)
04h	Hours (Timer)
03h	Minutes (Alarm)
02h	Minutes (Timer)
01h	Seconds (Alarm)
00h	Seconds (Timer)

82801

Extended Config. Memory Area (128 bytes)	FFh ... 80h
Standard Config. Memory Area (114 bytes)	7Fh ... 0Eh
RTC Area (14 bytes)	0Dh ... 00h

CMOS
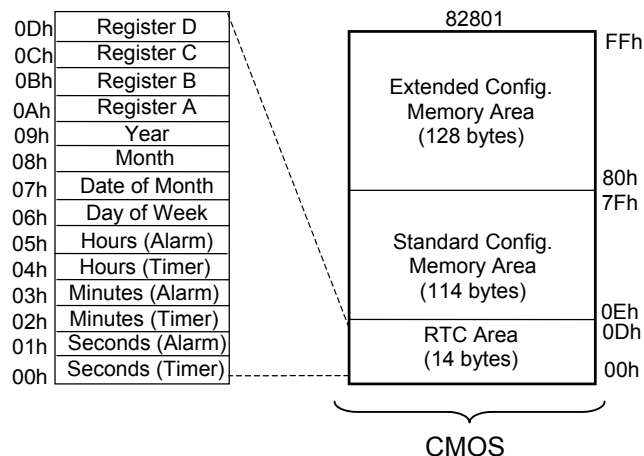
Figure 4-10. Configuration Memory Map

A lithium 3-VDC battery is used for maintaining the RTC and configuration memory while the system is powered down. During system operation a wire-Ored circuit allows the RTC and configuration memory to draw power from the power supply. The battery is located in a battery holder on the system board and has a life expectancy of four to eight years. When the battery has expired it is replaced with a Renata CR2032 or equivalent 3-VDC lithium battery.

4.6.1 CLEARING CMOS

The contents of configuration memory (including the Power-On Password) can be cleared by the following procedure:

1. Turn off the unit.
2. Disconnect the AC power cord from the outlet and/or system unit.
3. Remove the chassis hood (cover) and insure that no LEDs on the system board are illuminated.
4. Press and release the CMOS clear button on the system board.
5. Replace the chassis hood (cover).
6. Reconnect the AC power cord to the outlet and/or system unit.
7. Turn the unit on.

To clear **only** the Power-On Password refer to section 4.7.1.1.

4.6.2 CMOS ARCHIVE AND RESTORE

During the boot sequence the BIOS saves a copy of NVRAM (CMOS contents, password(s) and other system variables) in a portion of the flash ROM. Should the system become un-usable, the last good copy of NVRAM data can be restored with the Power Button Override function. This function is invoked with the following procedure:

1. With the unit powered down, press and release the power button.
2. Immediately after releasing the power button in step 1, press and hold the power button until the unit powers down. This action will be recorded as a Power Button Override event.

With the next startup sequence the BIOS will detect the occurrence of the Power Button Override event and will load the backup copy of NVRAM from the ROM to the CMOS.

> **NOTE:** The Power Button Override feature does not allow quick cycling of the system (turning on then off). If the power cord is disconnected during the POST routine, the splash screen image may become corrupted, requiring a re-flashing of the ROM (refer to chapter 8, BIOS ROM).

4.6.3 STANDARD CMOS LOCATIONS

Table 4-14 and the following paragraphs describe standard configuration memory locations 0Ah-3Fh. These locations are accessible through using OUT/IN assembly language instructions using port 70/71h or BIOS function INT15, AX=E823h.

Table 4-14.
Configuration Memory (CMOS) Map

Location	Function	Location	Function
00-0Dh	Real-time clock	24h	System board ID
0Eh	Diagnostic status	25h	System architecture data
0Fh	System reset code	26h	Auxiliary peripheral configuration
10h	Diskette drive type	27h	Speed control external drive
11h	Reserved	28h	Expanded/base mem. size, IRQ12
12h	Hard drive type	29h	Miscellaneous configuration
13h	Security functions	2Ah	Hard drive timeout
14h	Equipment installed	2Bh	System inactivity timeout
15h	Base memory size, low byte/KB	2Ch	Monitor timeout, Num Lock Cntrl
16h	Base memory size, high byte/KB	2Dh	Additional flags
17h	Extended memory, low byte/KB	2Eh-2Fh	Checksum of locations 10h-2Dh
18h	Extended memory, high byte/KB	30h-31h	Total extended memory tested
19h	Hard drive 1, primary controller	32h	Century
1Ah	Hard drive 2, primary controller	33h	Miscellaneous flags set by BIOS
1Bh	Hard drive 1, secondary controller	34h	International language
1Ch	Hard drive 2, secondary controller	35h	APM status flags
1Dh	Enhanced hard drive support	36h	ECC POST test single bit
1Eh	Reserved	37h-3Fh	Power-on password
1Fh	Power management functions	40-FFh	Feature Control/Status

NOTES:
> Assume unmarked gaps are reserved.
> Higher locations (>3Fh) contain information that should be accessed using the INT15, AX=E845h BIOS function (refer to Chapter 8 for BIOS function descriptions).

RTC Control Register A, Byte 0Ah

Bit	Function
7	Update in Progress. Read only. 0 = Time update will not occur before 2444 us 1 = Time update will occur within 2444 us
6..4	Divider Chain Control. R/W. 00x = Oscillator disabled. 010 = Normal operation (time base frequency = 32.768 KHz). 11x = Divider chain reset.
3..0	Periodic Interrupt Control. R/W. Specifies the periodic interrupt interval. 0000 = none 1000 = 3.90625 ms 0001 = 3.90625 ms 1001 = 7.8125 ms 0010 = 7.8125 ms 1010 = 15. 625 ms 0011 = 122.070 us 1011 = 31.25 ms 0100 = 244.141 us 1100 = 62.50 ms 0101 = 488.281 us 1101 = 125 ms 0110 = 976.562 us 1110 = 250 ms 0111 = 1.953125 ms 1111 = 500 ms

RTC Control Register B, Byte 0Bh

Bit	Function
7	Time Update Enable/disable 0 = Normal operation, 1 = Disable time updating for time set
6	Periodic Interrupt Enable/Disable. 0 = Disable, 1 = Enable interval specified by Register A
5	Alarm Interrupt Enable/disable 0 = Disabled, 1 = Enabled
4	End-of-Update Interrupt Enable/Disable 0 = Disabled, 1 = Enabled
3	Reserved (read 0)
2	Time/Date Format Select 0 = BCD format, 1 = Binary format
1	Time Mode 0 = 12-hour mode, 1 = 24-hour mode
0	Automatic Daylight Savings Time Enable/Disable 0 = Disable 1 = Enable (Advance 1 hour on 1st Sunday in April, retreat 1 hour on last Sunday in October).

RTC Status Register C, Byte 0Ch

Bit	Function
7	If set, interrupt output signal active (read only)
6	If set, indicates periodic interrupt flag
5	If set, indicates alarm interrupt
4	If set, indicates end-of-update interrupt
3..0	Reserved

RTC Status Register D, Byte 0Dh

Bit	Function
7	RTC Power Status 0 = RTC has lost power 1 = RTC has not lost power
6..0	Reserved

Configuration Byte 0Eh, Diagnostic Status
Default Value = 00h
This byte contains diagnostic status data.

Configuration Byte 0Fh, System Reset Code
Default Value = 00h
This byte contains the system reset code.

Configuration Byte 10h, Diskette Drive Type

Bit	Function
7..4	Primary (Drive A) Diskette Drive Type
3..0	Secondary (Drive B) Diskette Drive Type

Valid values for bits <7..4> and bits <3..0>:
        0000 = Not installed
        0001 = 360-KB drive
        0010 = 1.2-MB drive
        0011 = 720-KB drive
        0100 = 1.44-MB/1.25-MB drive
        0110 = 2.88-MB drive
        (all other values reserved)

Configuration Byte 12h, Hard Drive Type

Bit	Function
7..4	Primary Controller 1, Hard Drive 1 Type: 0000 = none 1000 = Type 8 0001 = Type 1 1001 = Type 9 0010 = Type 2 1010 = Type 10 0011 = Type 3 1011 = Type 11 0100 = Type 4 1100 = Type 12 0101 = Type 5 1101 = Type 13 0110 = Type 6 1110 = Type 14 0111 = Type 7 1111 = other (use bytes 19h)
3..0	Primary Controller 1, Hard Drive 2 Type: 0000 = none 1000 = Type 8 0001 = Type 1 1001 = Type 9 0010 = Type 2 1010 = Type 10 0011 = Type 3 1011 = Type 11 0100 = Type 4 1100 = Type 12 0101 = Type 5 1101 = Type 13 0110 = Type 6 1110 = Type 14 0111 = Type 7 1111 = other (use bytes 1Ah)

Configuration Byte 13h, Security Functions
Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7	Reserved
6	QuickBlank Enable After Standby: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable
5	Administrator Password: 0 = Not present 1 = Present
4	Reserved
3	Diskette Boot Enable: 0 = Enable 1 = Disable
2	QuickLock Enable: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable
1	Network Server Mode/Security Lock Override: 0 = Disable 1 = Enable
0	Password State (Set by BIOS at Power-up) 0 = Not set 1 = Set

Configuration Byte 14h, Equipment Installed
Default Value (standard configuration) = 03h

Bit	Function
7,6	No. of Diskette Drives Installed: 00 = 1 drive 10 = 3 drives 01 = 2 drives 11 = 4 drives
5..2	Reserved
1	Coprocessor Present 0 = Coprocessor not installed 1 = Coprocessor installed
0	Diskette Drives Present 0 = No diskette drives installed 1 = Diskette drive(s) installed

Configuration Bytes 15h and 16h, Base Memory Size
Default Value = 280h
Bytes 15h and 16h hold a 16-bit value that specifies the base memory size in 1-KB (1024) increments. Valid base memory sizes are 512 and 640 kilobytes .

Configuration Bytes 17h and 18h, Extended Memory Size

Bytes 17h and 18h hold a 16-bit value that specifies the extended memory size in 1-KB increments.

Configuration Bytes 19h-1Ch, Hard Drive Types

Byte 19h contains the hard drive type for drive 1 of the primary controller if byte 12h bits <7..4> hold 1111b. Byte 1Ah contains the hard drive type for drive 2 of the primary controller if byte 12h bits <3..0> hold 1111b. Bytes1Bh and 1Ch contain the hard drive types for hard drives 1 and 2 of the secondary controller.

Configuration Byte 1Dh, Enhanced IDE Hard Drive Support
Default Value = F0h

Bit	Function
7	EIDE - Drive C (83h)
6	EIDE - Drive D (82h)
5	EIDE - Drive E (81h)
4	EIDE - Drive F (80h)
3..0	Reserved

Values for bits <7..4> :
       0 = Disable
       1 = Enable for auto-configure

Configuration Byte 1Fh, Power Management Functions
Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7..4	Reserved
3	Slow Processor Clock for Low Power Mode 0 = Processor runs at full speed 1 = Processor runs at slow speed
2	Reserved
1	Monitor Off Mode 0 = Turn monitor power off after 45 minutes in standby 1 = Leave monitor power on
0	Energy Saver Mode Indicator (Blinking LED) 0 = Disable 1 = Enable

Configuration Byte 24h, System Board Identification
Default Value = 7Eh
Configuration memory location 24h holds the system board ID.

Configuration Byte 25h, System Architecture Data
Default Value = 0Bh

Bit	Function
7..4	Reserved
3	Unmapping of ROM: 0 = Allowed 1 = Not allowed
2	Reserved
1,0	Diagnostic Status Byte Address 00 = Memory locations 80C00000h-80C00004h 01 = I/O ports 878h-87Ch 11 = neither place

Configuration Byte 26h, Auxiliary Peripheral Configuration

Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7,6	I/O Delay Select 00 = 420 ns (default) 01 = 300 ns 10 = 2600 ns 11 = 540 ns
5	Alternative A20 Switching 0 = Disable port 92 mode 1 = Enable port 92 mode
4	Bi-directional Print Port Mode 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled
3	Graphics Type 0 = Color 1 = Monochrome
2	Hard Drive Primary/Secondary Address Select: 0 = Primary 1 = Secondary
1	Diskette I/O Port 0 = Primary 1 = Secondary
0	Diskette I/O Port Enable 0 = Primary 1 = Secondary

Configuration Byte 27h, Speed Control/External Drive

Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7	Boot Speed 0 = Max MHz 1 = Fast speed
6..0	Reserved

Configuration Byte 28h, Expanded and Base Memory, IRQ12 Select

Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7	IRQ12 Select 0 = Mouse 1 = Expansion bus
6,5	Base Memory Size: 00 = 640 KB 01 = 512 KB 10 = 256 KB 11 = Invalid
4..0	Internal Compaq Memory: 00000 = None 00001 = 512 KB 00010 = 1 MB 00011 = 1.5 MB . . 11111 = 15.5 MB

Configuration Byte 29h, Miscellaneous Configuration Data
Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7..5	Reserved

4	Primary Hard Drive Enable (Non-PCI IDE Controllers)
	  0 = Disable
	  1 = Enable

3..0	Reserved

Configuration Byte 2Ah, Hard Drive Timeout
Default Value = 02h

Bit	Function
7..5	Reserved
4..0	Hard Drive Timeout (index to SIT timeout record)

Configuration Byte 2Bh, System Inactivity Timeout
Default Value = 23h

Bit	Function
7	Reserved

6,5	Power Conservation Boot
	  00 = Reserved
	  01 = PC on
	  10 = PC off
	  11 = Reserved

4..0	System Inactive Timeout. (Index to SIT system timeout record) 00000 = Disabled

Configuration Byte 2Ch, ScreenSave and NUMLOCK Control
Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7	Reserved

6	Numlock Control
	  0 = Numlock off at power on
	  1 = Numlock on at power on

5	Screen Blank Control:
	  0 = No screen blank
	  1 = Screen blank w/QuickLock

4..0	ScreenSave Timeout. (Index to SIT monitor timeout record) 000000 = Disabled

Configuration Byte 2Dh, Additional Flags

Default Value = 00h

Bit	Function
7..5	Reserved

4	Memory Test
	    0 = Test memory on power up only
	    1 = Test memory on warm boot

3	POST Error Handling (BIOS Defined)
	    0 = Display "Press F1 to Continue" on error
	    1 = Skip F1 message

2..0	Reserved

Configuration Byte 2Eh, 2Fh, Checksum

These bytes hold the checksum of bytes 10h to 2Dh.

Configuration Byte 30h, 31h, Total Extended Memory Tested

This location holds the amount of system memory that checked good during the POST.

Configuration Byte 32h, Century

This location holds the Century value in a binary coded decimal (BCD) format.

Configuration Byte 33h, Miscellaneous Flags

Default Value = 80h

Bit	Function
7	Memory Above 640 KB 0 = No, 1 = Yes
6	Reserved
5	Weitek Numeric Coprocessor Present: 0 = Not installed, 1 = Installed
4	Standard Numeric Coprocessor Present: 0 = Not installed, 1 = Installed
3..0	Reserved

Configuration Byte 34h, International Language Support

Default Value = 00h

Configuration Byte 35h, APM Status Flags

Default Value = 11h

Bit	Function
7..6	Power Conservation State: 00 = Ready 01 = Standby 10 = Suspend 11 = Off
5,4	Reserved
3	32-bit Connection: 0 = Disconnected, 1 = Connected
2	16-bit Connection 0 = Disconnected, 1 = Connected
1	Real Mode Connection 0 = Disconnected, 1 = Connected
0	Power Management Enable: 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled

Configuration Byte 36h, ECC POST Test Single Bit Errors

Default Value = 01h

Bit	Function
7	Row 7 Error Detect
6	Row 6 Error Detect
5	Row 5 Error Detect
4	Row 4 Error Detect
3	Row 3 Error Detect
2	Row 2 Error Detect
1	Row 1 Error Detect
0	Row 0 Error Detect

0 = No single bit error detected.
1 = Single bit error detected.

Configuration Byte 37h-3Fh, Power-On Password

These eight locations hold the power-on password.

4.7   SYSTEM MANAGEMENT

This section describes functions having to do with security, power management, temperature, and overall status. These functions are handled by hardware and firmware (BIOS) and generally configured through the Setup utility.

4.7.1 SECURITY FUNCTIONS

These systems include various features that provide different levels of security. Note that this subsection describes **only the hardware functionality** (including that supported by Setup) and does not describe security features that may be provided by the operating system and application software.

4.7.1.1   Power-On Password

These systems include a power-on password, which may be enabled or disabled (cleared) through a jumper on the system board. The jumper controls a GPIO input to the 82801 ICH2 that is checked during POST. The password is stored in configuration memory (CMOS) and if enabled and then forgotten by the user will require that either the password be cleared (preferable solution and described below) or the entire CMOS be cleared (refer to section 4.6).

To clear the password, use the following procedure:

1. Turn off the system and disconnect the AC power cord from the outlet and/or system unit.
2. Remove the cover (hood) as described in the appropriate User Guide or Maintainance And Service Guide. Insure that all system board LEDs are off (not illuminated).
3. Locate the password header/jumper (labeled E49 on these systems) and move the jumper from pins 1 and 2 and place on (just) pin 2 (for safekeeping).
4. Replace the cover.
5. Re-connect the AC power cord to the AC outlet and/or system unit.
6. Turn on the system. The POST routine will clear and disable the password.
7. To re-enable the password feature, repeat steps 1-6, replacing the jumper on pins 1 and 2 of header E49.

4.7.1.2   Setup Password

The Setup utility may be configured to be always changeable or changeable only by entering a password. The password is held on CMOS and, if forgotten, will require that CMOS be cleared (refer to section 4.6).

4.7.1.3   Cable Lock Provision

These systems include a chassis cutout (on the rear panel) for the attachment of a cable lock mechanism.

4.7.1.4   I/O Interface Security

The serial, parallel, USB, and diskette interfaces may be disabled individually through the Setup utility to guard against unauthorized access to a system. In addition, the ability to write to or boot from a removable media drive (such as the diskette drive) may be enabled through the Setup utility. The disabling of the serial, parallel, and diskette interfaces are a function of the LPC47B357 I/O controller. The USB ports are controlled through the 82801 ICH2.

4.7.1.5   Chassis Security

The Small Form Factor and Slim Desktop systems feature Smart Cover (hood) Sensor and Smart Cover (hood) Lock mechanisms to inhibit unauthorized tampering of the system unit.

Smart Cover Sensor

The Small Form Factor and Slim Desktop systems include a plunger switch that, when the cover (hood) is removed, closes and grounds an input of the 82801 ICH2. The battery-backed logic will record this "intrusion" event by setting a specific bit. This bit will remain set (even if the cover is replaced) until the system is powered up and the user completes the boot sequence successfully, at which time the bit will be cleared. Through Setup, the user can set this function to be used by Alert-On-LAN and or one of three levels of support for a "cover removed" condition:

Level 0 - Cover removal indication is essentially disabled at this level. During POST, status bit is cleared and no other action is taken by BIOS.
Level 1 - During POST the message "The computer's cover has been removed since the last system start up" is displayed and time stamp in CMOS is updated.
Level 2 - During POST the "The computer's cover has been removed since the last system start up" message is displayed, time stamp in CMOS is updated, and the user is prompted for the administrator password.

Smart Cover Lock

The Small Form Factor and Slim Desktop systems include a solenoid-operated locking bar that, when activated, prevents the cover (hood) from being removed. The GPIO ports 44 and 45 of the LPC47B357 I/O controller provide the lock and unlock signals to the solenoid. A locked hood may be bypassed by removing special screws that hold the locking mechanism in place. The special screws are removed with the Compaq Smart Cover Lock Failsafe Key (Compaq p/n xxxxxx).

4.7.2 POWER MANAGEMENT

This system provides baseline hardware support of ACPI- and APM-compliant firmware and software. Key power-consuming components (processor, chipset, I/O controller, and fan) can be placed into a reduced power mode either automatically or by user control. The system can then be brought back up ("wake-up") by events defined by the ACPI specification. The ACPI wake-up events supported by this system are listed as follows:

ACPI Wake-Up Event	System Wakes From
Power Button	Suspend or soft-off
RTC Alarm	Suspend or soft-off
Wake On LAN (w/NIC)	Suspend or soft-off
PME	Suspend or soft-off
Serial Port Ring	Suspend or soft-off
USB	Suspend only
Keyboard	Suspend only
Mouse	Suspend only

4.7.3 SYSTEM STATUS

These systems provide a visual indication of system boot and ROM flash status through the keyboard LEDs and operational status using bi-colored power and hard drive activity LEDs as indicated in Tables 4-15 and 4-16 respectively.

> **NOTE:** The LED indications listed in Table 4-15 are valid only for PS/2-type keyboards. A USB keyboard will not provide LED status for the listed events, although audible (beep) indications will occur.

Table 4-15.
System Boot/ROM Flash Status LED Indications

Event	NUM Lock LED	CAPs Lock LED	Scroll Lock LED
System memory failure [1]	Blinking	Off	Off
Graphics controller failure [2]	Off	Blinking	Off
System failure prior to graphics cntlr. initialization [3]	Off	Off	Blinking
ROMPAQ diskette not present, faulty, or drive prob.	On	Off	Off
Password prompt	Off	On	Off
Invalid ROM detected - flash failed	Blinking [4]	Blinking [4]	Blinking [4]
Keyboard locked in network mode	Blinking [5]	Blinking [5]	Blinking [5]
Successful boot block ROM flash	On [6]	On [6]	On [6]

NOTES:
[1] Accompanied by 1 short, 2 long audio beeps
[2] Accompanied by 1 long, 2 short audio beeps
[3] Accompanied by 2 long, 1 short audio beeps
[4] All LEDs will blink in sync twice, accompanied by 1 long and three short audio beeps
[5] LEDs will blink in sequence (NUM Lock, then CAPs Lock, then Scroll Lock)
[6] Accompanied by rising audio tone.

Table 4-16.
System Operational Status LED Indications

System Status	Power LED	Hard Drive LED
S0: System on (normal operation)	Steady green	Green w/HD activity
S1: Suspend	Blinks green @ 1 Hz	Off
S3: Suspend to RAM	Blinks green @ 1 Hz	Off
S4: Suspend to disk	Blinks green @ 0.5 Hz	Off
S5: Soft off	Off - clear	Off
Processor not seated	Steady red	Off
CPU thermal shutdown	Blinks red @ 4 Hz [1]	Off
ROM error	Blinks red @ 1 Hz	Off
Power supply crowbar activated	Blinks red @ .5 Hz	Off
System off	Off	Off

NOTE:

[1] Later systems using PCA#s 011305, 011308, or 011311 will power down for this condition.

4.7.4 THERMAL SENSING AND COOLING

All systems feature a variable-speed fan as part of the power supply assembly. All systems also provide a system board connection for a processor's heat sink-mounted fan (standard on all Small Form Factor and on some Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower units). Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems provide an auxiliary chassis fan. All fans are controlled through temperature sensing logic both on the system board and in the power supply, with slight differences between the Small Form Factor (Figure 4-11) and the Slim Desktop / Configurable Minitower (Figure 4-12) systems.

An ASIC monitors a thermal diode internal to the processor and provides a Fan CMD signal that the Speed Control logic uses to vary the speed of the fan(s) through the negative terminal of the fan(s). The turning off of the fan(s) as the result from the system being placed into a Sleep condition is initiated by the ASIC asserting the Fan Off- signal, which results in the On/Off Control logic shutting off the +12 volts to the fan(s).

The main differences between the system types are as follows:

♦ In the Small Form Factor system the processor fan (if installed) is controlled only by the ASIC and not affected by a power supply thermal condition
♦ In the Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower systems all fans are speed-controlled by the ASIC through the power supply so that a thermal condition of the processor or power supply will affect all fans simultaneously.

Typical cooling conditions include the following:

1. Normal – Low fan speed.
2. Hot processor – ASIC directs Speed Control logic to increase speed of fan(s).
3. Hot power supply – Power supply increases speed of fan(s).
4. Sleep state – Fan(s) turned off. Hot processor or power supply will result in starting fan(s).

High and low thermal parameters are programmed into the ASIC by BIOS during POST. If the high thermal parameter is reached then the fan(s) will be turned on full speed and the Therm-signal will be asserted. The asserted Therm- signal can, with the proper software setup, be used by the 82801 ICH2 to initiate an AOL message for transmission over a network (refer to Network Interface Controller subsection in Chapter 5).

△ **NOTE:** These systems do **not** support thermister-based fans used on earlier products.
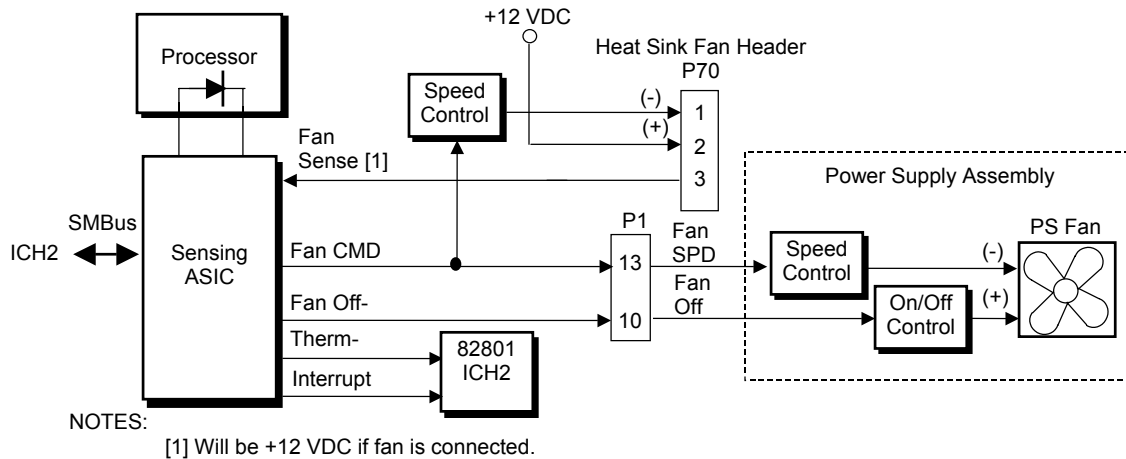
Figure 4-11. Small Form Factor Fan Control Block Diagram
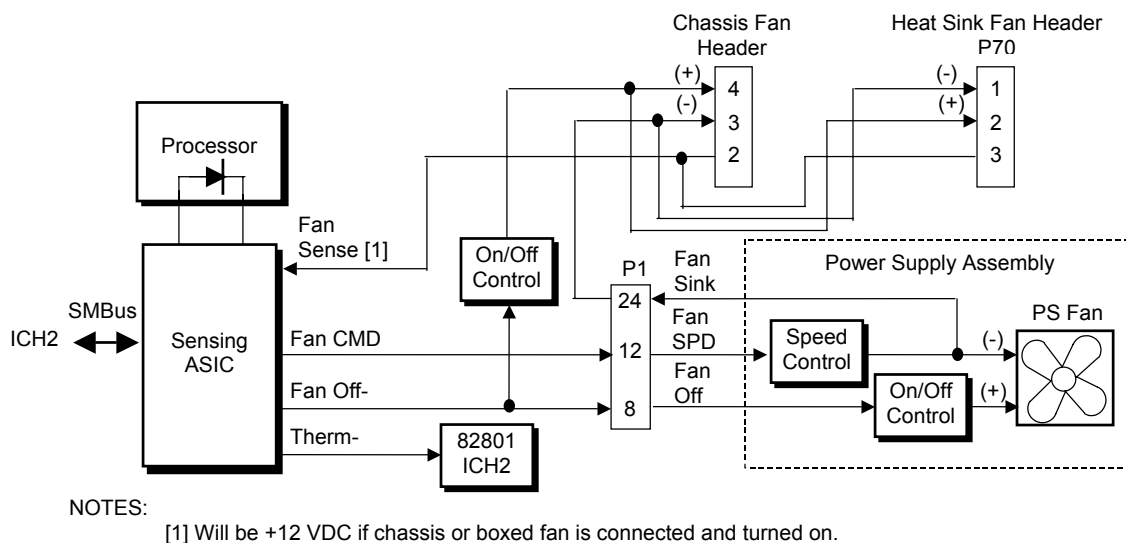
Figure 4-12. Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower Fan Control Block Diagram

4.8 REGISTER MAP AND MISCELLANEOUS FUNCTIONS

This section contains the system I/O map and information on general-purpose functions of the ICH2 and I/O controller.

4.8.1 SYSTEM I/O MAP

Table 4-17 lists the fixed addresses of the input/output (I/O) ports.

Table 4-17.
System I/O Map

I/O Port	Function
0000..001Fh	DMA Controller 1
0020..002Dh	Interrupt Controller 1
002E, 002Fh	Index, Data Ports to LPC47B357 I/O Controller (primary)
0030..003Dh	Interrupt Controller
0040..0042h	Timer 1
004E, 004Fh	Index, Data Ports to LPC47B357 I/O Controller (secondary)
0050..0052h	Timer / Counter
0060..0067h	Microcontroller, NMI Controller (alternating addresses)
0070..0077h	RTC Controller
0080..0091h	DMA Controller
0092h	Port A, Fast A20/Reset Generator
0093..009Fh	DMA Controller
00A0..00B1h	Interrupt Controller 2
00B2h, 00B3h	APM Control/Status Ports
00B4..00BDh	Interrupt Controller
00C0..00DFh	DMA Controller 2
00F0h	Coprocessor error register
0170..0177h	IDE Controller 2 (active only if standard I/O space is enabled for primary drive)
01F0..01F7h	IDE Controller 1 (active only if standard I/O space is enabled for secondary drive)
0278..027Fh	Parallel Port (LPT2)
02E8..02EFh	Serial Port (COM4)
02F8..02FFh	Serial Port (COM2)
0370..0377h	Diskette Drive Controller Secondary Address
0376h	IDE Controller 2 (active only if standard I/O space is enabled for primary drive)
0378..037Fh	Parallel Port (LPT1)
03B0..03DFh	Graphics Controller
03BC..03BEh	Parallel Port (LPT3)
03E8..03EFh	Serial Port (COM3)
03F0..03F5h	Diskette Drive Controller Primary Addresses
03F6h	IDE Controller 1 (active only if standard I/O space is enabled for sec. drive)
03F8..03FFh	Serial Port (COM1)
04D0, 04D1h	Interrupt Controller
0678..067Fh	Parallel Port (LPT2)
0778..077Fh	Parallel Port (LPT1)
07BC..07BEh	Parallel Port (LPT3)
0CF8h	PCI Configuration Address (dword access only)
0CF9h	Reset Control Register
0CFCh	PCI Configuration Data (byte, word, or dword access)

NOTE:
    Assume unmarked gaps are unused, reserved, or used by functions that employ variable I/O address mapping. Some ranges may include reserved addresses.

4.8.2 82801 ICH2 GENERAL PURPOSE FUNCTIONS

The 82801 ICH2 component includes a number of single and multi-purpose pins available as general-purpose input/output (GPIO) ports. The GPIO ports are configured (enabled/disabled) during POST by BIOS through the PCI configuration registers of the ICH2's LPC I/F Bridge (82801, function 0). The GPIO ports are controlled through 64 bytes of I/O space that is mapped during POST. Table 4-18 lists the utilization of the ICH2's GPIO ports in these systems. Table 4-18 lists the GPIO registers for the LPC47B357.

Table 4-18.
82801 ICH2 GPIO Register Utilization

GPIO Port #	Function	Direction
0	PS LED	I
1	NIC REQ5	I
2	IRQE-	I
3	IRQF-	I
4	IRQG-	I
5	IRQH-	I
6	HD LED	I
7	--	NC
8	--	NC
12	TAFI ASIC Interrupt	I
13	SMI	I
18	--	NC
19	--	NC
20	--	NC
21	--	NC
22	--	NC
23	--	NC
24	--	NC
25	--	NC
27	--	NC
28	Password enable	I

NOTE:
   NC = not connected

4.8.3 LPC47B357 I/O CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS

The LPC47B357 I/O controller contains various functions such as the keyboard/mouse interfaces, diskette interface, serial interfaces, and parallel interface. While the control of these interfaces uses standard AT-type I/O addressing (as described in chapter 5) the configuration of these functions uses indexed ports unique to the LPC47B357. In these systems, hardware strapping selects I/O addresses 02Eh and 02Fh at reset as the Index/Data ports for accessing the logical devices within the LPC47B357.

Table 4-19 lists the PnP standard control registers for the LPC47B357.

Table 4-19.
LPC47B357 I/O Controller Control Registers

Index	Function	Reset Value
02h	Configuration Control	00h
03h	Reserved	

07h	Logical Device (Interface) Select:
	  00h = Diskette Drive I/F
	  01h = Reserved
	  02h = Reserved
	  03h = Parallel I/F
	  04h = Serial I/F (UART 1/Port A)
	  05h = Serial I/F (UART 2/Port B)
	  06h = Reserved
	  07h = Keyboard I/F
	  08h = Reserved
	  09h = Reserved
	  0Ah = Runtime Registers (GPIO Config.)
	  0Bh = Reserved
		00h

20h	Super I/O ID Register (SID)	56h
21h	Revision	--
22h	Logical Device Power Control	00h
23h	Logical Device Power Management	00h
24h	PLL / Oscillator Control	04h
25h	Reserved	
26h	Configuration Address (Low Byte)	
27h	Configuration Address (High Byte)	
28-2Fh	Reserved	

NOTE:
> For a detailed description of registers refer to appropriate SMC documentation.

The configuration registers are accessed through I/O registers 2Eh (index) and 2Fh (data) after the configuration phase has been activated by writing 55h to I/O port 2Eh. The desired interface (logical device) is initiated by firmware selecting logical device number of the 47B347 using the following sequence:

1. Write 07h to I/O register 2Eh.
2. Write value of logical device to I/O register 2Fh.
3. Write 30h to I/O register 2Eh.
4. Write 01h to I/O register 2Fh (this activates the interface).

Writing AAh to 2Eh deactivates the configuration phase.

4.8.3.1 LPC47B357 GPIO Utilization

The LPC47B357 I/O Controller provides 62 general-purpose pins that can be individually configured for specific purposes. These pins are configured through the Runtime registers (logical device 0Ah) during the system's configuration phase of the boot sequence by the BIOS.

Table 4-20 lists the GPIO registers for the LPC47B357. Note that not all ports are listed as this table defines only the custom implementation of GPIO ports. Refer to SMC documentation for standard usage of unlisted GPIO ports.

Table 4-20.
LPC47B357 GPIO Port Utilization

GPIO	Function	Direction	GPIO	Function	Direction
10	Board rev 1	I	42	ICH2 SCI	O
11	Board rev 0	I	43	--	NC
12	--	NC	44	Hood Lock [1]	I
13	PME-	I	45	Hood Unlock [1]	I
14	WOL	NC	46	ICH2 SMI-	O
15	Events	NC	60	PCI Slot Reset	O
16	Fan sense	I	61	AGP Slot Reset	O
17	LED test	O	62	PWR Button In	I
20	Pri. IDE 80-pin Cable Detect	I	63	SLP S3	I
21	Sec. IDE 80-pin Cable Detect	I	64	SLP S5	I
22	--	NC	65	CPU Changed	I
23	Backplane board ID 0	I	66	PWR Button Out	O
24	BIOS fail for AOL	I	67	PS On	O
25	Backplane board ID 1	I	70	Remote Off	I
26	Processor Present	I	71	Backplane Detect 1	I
27	--	NC	72	Backplane Detect 2	!
30	PS LED Color Grn	O	73	--	NC
31	PS LED Blink	O	74	NIC PHY Disable	O
32	Thermal Trip	I	75	--	NC
33	2 MB Media ID	I	76	--	NC
34	FWH Write Protect	O	85	Pwr SEL	O
35	FWH Reset	O	86	S3 3.3 VDC On	O
36	Diskette Motor A	O	--	--	--
37	Diskette Select A	O	--	--	--

NOTE:
  [1] Not implemented on Configurable Minitower models.

4.8.3.2   I/O Controller Miscellaneous Functions

The systems covered in this guide utilize the following specialized functions built into the LPC 47B357 I/O Controller:

♦   Power/Hard drive LED control – The I/O controller provides color and blink control for the front panel LEDs used for indicating system events as listed below:

System Status	Power LED	HD LED
S0: System on (normal operation)	Steady green	Green w/HD activity
S1: Suspend	Blinks green @ 1 Hz	Off
S3: Suspend to RAM	Blinks green @ 1 Hz	Off
S4: Suspend to disk	Blinks green @ 0.5 Hz	Off
S5: Soft off	Off - clear	Off
Processor not seated	Steady red	Off
CPU thermal shutdown	Blinks red @ 4 Hz [1]	Off
ROM error	Blinks red @ 1 Hz	Off
Power supply crowbar activated	Blinks red @ 0.5 Hz	Off
System off	Off	Off

NOTE:

   [1] Later systems using PCA#s 011305, 011308, or 011311 will power down for this condition.

♦   Intruder sensing – Used on Small Form Factor and Slim Desktop models, battery-backed D-latch logic internal to the LPC47B357 is connected to the hood sensor switch to record hood (cover) removal.

♦   Hood lock/unlock – Used on Small Form Factor and Slim Desktop models, logic internal to the LPC47B34x controls the lock bar mechanism.

♦   I/O security – The parallel, serial, and diskette interfaces may be disabled individually by software and the LPC47B357's disabling register locked. If the disabling register is locked, a system reset through a cold boot is required to gain access to the disabling (Device Disable) register.

♦   Processor present/speed detection – One of the battery-back general-purpose inputs (GPI26) of the LPC47B357 detects if the processor has been removed. The occurrence of this event is passed to the ICH2 that will, during the next boot sequence, initiate the speed selection routine for the processor. The speed selection function replaces the manual DIP switch configuration procedure required on previous systems.

♦   Legacy/ACPI power button mode control – The LPC47B357 receives the pulse signal from the system's power button and produces the PS On signal according to the mode (legacy or ACPI) selected. Refer to chapter 7 for more information regarding power management.

Chapter 5
INPUT/OUTPUT INTERFACES

5.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the standard (i.e., system board) interfaces that provide input and output (I/O) porting of data and specifically discusses interfaces that are controlled through I/O-mapped registers. The following I/O interfaces are covered in this chapter:

5.2 ENHANCED IDE INTERFACE

The enhanced IDE (EIDE) interface consists of primary and secondary controllers integrated into the 82801 ICH2 component of the chipset. Two 40-pin IDE connectors (one for each controller) are included on the system board. Each controller can be configured independently for the following modes of operation:

♦ Programmed I/O (PIO) mode – CPU controls drive transactions through standard I/O mapped registers of the IDE drive.
♦ 8237 DMA mode – CPU offloads drive transactions using DMA protocol with transfer rates up to 16 MB/s.
♦ Ultra ATA/100 mode – Preferred bus mastering source-synchronous protocol providing transfer rates of 100 MB/s.

NOTE: These systems include 80-conductor data cables required for UATA/66 and /100 modes.

5.2.1 IDE PROGRAMMING

The IDE interface is configured as a PCI device during POST and controlled through I/O-mapped registers at runtime.

Hard drives types not found in the ROM's parameter table are automatically configured as to (soft)type by DOS as follows:

Primary controller: drive 0, type 65; drive 1, type 66
Secondary controller: drive 0, type 68; drive 1, type 15

Non-DOS (non-Windows) operating systems may require using Setup (F10) for drive configuration.

5.2.1.1 IDE Configuration Registers

The IDE controller is configured as a PCI device with bus mastering capability. The PCI configuration registers for the IDE controller function (PCI device #31, function #1) are listed in Table 5-1.

Table 5-1.
EIDE PCI Configuration Registers (82801, Device 31/Function 1)

PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00-01h	Vender ID	8086h	0F..1Fh	Reserved	0's
02-03h	Device ID	244Bh	20-23h	BMIDE Base Address	1
04-05h	PCI Command	0000h	2C, 2Dh	Subsystem Vender ID	0000h
06-07h	PCI Status	0280h	2E, 2Fh	Subsystem ID	0000h
08h	Revision ID	00h	30..3Fh	Reserved	0's
09h	Programming	80h	40-43h	Pri./Sec. IDE Timing	0's
0Ah	Sub-Class	01h	44h	Slave IDE Timing	00h
0Bh	Base Class Code	01h	48h	Sync. DMA Control	00h
0Dh	Master Latency Timer	00h	4A-4Bh	Sync. DMA Timing	0000h
0Eh	Header Type	00h	54h	EIDE I/O Config.Register	00h

NOTE:
   Assume unmarked gaps are reserved and/or not used.

5.2.1.2 IDE Bus Master Control Registers

The IDE interface can perform PCI bus master operations using the registers listed in Table 5-2. These registers occupy 16 bytes of variable I/O space set by software and indicated by PCI configuration register 20h in the previous table.

Table 5-2.
IDE Bus Master Control Registers

I/O Addr. Offset	Size (Bytes)	Register	Default Value
00h	1	Bus Master IDE Command (Primary)	00h
02h	1	Bus Master IDE Status (Primary)	00h
04h	4	Bus Master IDE Descriptor Pointer (Pri.)	0000 0000h
08h	1	Bus Master IDE Command (Secondary)	00h
0Ah	2	Bus Master IDE Status (Secondary)	00h
0Ch	4	Bus Master IDE Descriptor Pointer (Sec.)	0000 0000h

NOTE:
   Unspecified gaps are reserved, will return indeterminate data, and should not be written to.

5.2.2 IDE CONNECTOR

This system uses a standard 40-pin connector for the primary IDE device and connects (via a cable) to the hard drive installed in the right side drive bay. Note that some signals are re-defined for UATA/33 and UATA/66 modes, which require a special 80-conductor cable (supplied) designed to reduce cross-talk. Device power is supplied through a separate connector.
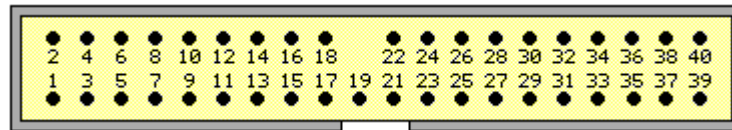

Figure 5-1. 40-Pin Primary IDE Connector (on system board).

Table 5-3.
40-Pin Primary IDE Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	RESET-	Reset	21	DRQ	DMA Request
2	GND	Ground	22	GND	Ground
3	DD7	Data Bit <7>	23	IOW-	I/O Write [1]
4	DD8	Data Bit <8>	24	GND	Ground
5	DD6	Data Bit <6>	25	IOR-	I/O Read [2]
6	DD9	Data Bit <9>	26	GND	Ground
7	DD5	Data Bit <5>	27	IORDY	I/O Channel Ready [3]
8	DD10	Data Bit <10>	28	CSEL	Cable Select
9	DD4	Data Bit <4>	29	DAK-	DMA Acknowledge
10	DD11	Data Bit <11>	30	GND	Ground
11	DD3	Data Bit <3>	31	IRQn	Interrupt Request [4]
12	DD12	Data Bit <12>	32	IO16-	16-bit I/O
13	DD2	Data Bit <2>	33	DA1	Address 1
14	DD13	Data Bit <13>	34	DSKPDIAG	Pass Diagnostics
15	DD1	Data Bit <1>	35	DA0	Address 0
16	DD14	Data Bit <14>	36	DA2	Address 2
17	DD0	Data Bit <0>	37	CS0-	Chip Select
18	DD15	Data Bit <15>	38	CS1-	Chip Select
19	GND	Ground	39	HDACTIVE-	Drive Active (front panel LED) [5]
20	--	Key	40	GND	Ground

NOTES:
[1] On UATA/33 and higher modes, re-defined as STOP.
[2] On UATA/33 and higher mode reads, re-defined as DMARDY-.
    On UATA/33 and higher mode writes, re-defined as STROBE.
[3] On UATA/33 and higher mode reads, re-defined as STROBE-.
    On UATA/33 and higher mode writes, re-defined as DMARDY-.
[4] Primary connector wired to IRQ14, secondary connector wired to IRQ15.
[5] Pin 39 is used for spindle sync and drive activity (becomes SPSYNC/DACT-)
    when synchronous drives are connected.

5.3   DISKETTE DRIVE INTERFACE

The diskette drive interface supports up to two diskette drives, each of which use a common cable connected to a standard 34-pin diskette drive connector. All models come standard with a 3.5-inch 1.44-MB diskette drive installed as drive A. The drive designation is determined by which connector is used on the diskette drive cable. The drive attached to the end connector is drive A while the drive attached to the second (next to the end) connector) is drive B.

On all models, the diskette drive interface function is integrated into the LPC47B357 super I/O component. The internal logic of the I/O controller is software-compatible with standard 82077-type logic. The diskette drive controller has three operational phases in the following order:

♦   Command phase - The controller receives the command from the system.
♦   Execution phase - The controller carries out the command.
♦   Results phase - Status and results data is read back from the controller to the system.

The Command phase consists of several bytes written in series from the CPU to the data register (3F5h/375h). The first byte identifies the command and the remaining bytes define the parameters of the command. The Main Status register (3F4h/374h) provides data flow control for the diskette drive controller and must be polled between each byte transfer during the Command phase.

The Execution phase starts as soon as the last byte of the Command phase is received. An Execution phase may involve the transfer of data to and from the diskette drive, a mechnical control function of the drive, or an operation that remains internal to the diskette drive controller. Data transfers (writes or reads) with the diskette drive controller are by DMA, using the DRQ2 and DACK2- signals for control.

The Results phase consists of the CPU reading a series of status bytes (from the data register (3F5h/375h)) that indicate the results of the command. Note that some commands do not have a Result phase, in which case the Execution phase can be followed by a Command phase.

During periods of inactivity, the diskette drive controller is in a non-operation mode known as the Idle phase.

5.3.1 DISKETTE DRIVE PROGRAMMING

Programming the diskette drive interface consists of configuration, which occurs typically during POST, and control, which occurs at runtime.

5.3.1.1 Diskette Drive Interface Configuration

The diskette drive controller must be configured for a specific address and also must be enabled before it can be used. Address selection and enabling of the diskette drive interface are affected by firmware through the PnP configuration registers of the 47B357 I/O controller during POST.

The configuration registers are accessed through I/O registers 2Eh (index) and 2Fh (data) after the configuration phase has been activated by writing 55h to I/O port 2Eh. The diskette drive I/F is initiated by firmware selecting logical device 0 of the 47B357 using the following sequence:

1. Write 07h to I/O register 2Eh.
2. Write 00h to I/O register 2Fh (this selects the diskette drive I/F).
3. Write 30h to I/O register 2Eh.
4. Write 01h to I/O register 2Fh (this activates the interface).

Writing AAh to 2Eh deactivates the configuration phase. The diskette drive I/F configuration registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-4.
Diskette Drive Interface Configuration Registers

Index Address	Function	R/W	Reset Value
30h	Activate	R/W	01h
60-61h	Base Address	R/W	03F0h
70h	Interrupt Select	R/W	06h
74h	DMA Channel Select	R/W	02h
F0h	DD Mode	R/W	02h
F1h	DD Option	R/W	00h
F2h	DD Type	R/W	FFh
F4h	DD 0	R/W	00h
F5h	DD 1	R/W	00h

For detailed configuration register information refer to the SMSC data sheet for the LPC47B357 I/O component.

5.3.1.2 Diskette Drive Interface Control

The BIOS function INT 13 provides basic control of the diskette drive interface. The diskette drive interface can be controlled by software through the LPC47B357's I/O-mapped registers listed in Table 5-5. The diskette drive controller of the LPC47B357 operates in the PC/AT mode in these systems.

Table 5-5.
Diskette Drive Interface Control Registers

Pri. Addr.	Sec. Addr.	Register	R/W
3F0h	370h	Status Register A: <7> Interrupt pending <6> Reserved (always 1) <5> STEP pin status (active high) <4> TRK 0 status (active high) <3> HDSEL status (0 = side 0, 1 = side 1) <2> INDEX status (active high) <1> WR PRTK status (0 = disk is write protected) <0> Direction (0 = outward, 1 = inward)	R
3F1h	371h	Status Register B: <7,6> Reserved (always 1's) <5> DOR bit 0 status <4> Write data toggle <3> Read data toggle <2> WGATE status (active high) <1,0> MTR 2, 1 ON- status (active high)	R
3F2h	372h	Digital Output Register (DOR): <7,6> Reserved <5,4> Motor 1, 0 enable (active high) <3> DMA enable (active high) <2> Reset (active low) <1,0> Drive select (00 = Drive 1, 01 = Drive 2, 10 = Reserved, 11 = Tape drive)	R/W
3F3h	373h	Tape Drive Register (available for compatibility)	R/W
3F4h	374h	Main Status Register (MSR): <7> Request for master (host can transfer data) (active high) <6> Transfer direction (0 – write, 1 = read) <5> non-DMA execution (active high) <4> Command busy (active high) <3,2> Reserved <1,0> Drive 1, 2 busy (active high)	R
		Data Rate Select Register (DRSR): <7> Software reset (active high) <6> Low power mode enable (active high) <5> Reserved (0) <4..2> Precompensation select (default = 000) <1,0> Data rate select (00 = 500 Kb/s, 01 = 300 Kb/s, 10 = 250 Kb/s, 11 = 2/1 Mb/s)	W
3F5h	375h	Data Register: <7..0> Data	R/W
3F6h	376h	Reserved	--
3F7h	377h	Digital Input Register (DIR): <7> DSK CHG status (records opposite value of pin) <6..0> Reserved (0's)	R
		Configuration Control Register (CCR): <7..2> Reserved <1,0> Data rate select (00 = 500 Kb/s, 01 = 300 Kb/s, 10 = 250 Kb/s, 11 = 2/1 Mb/s)	W

NOTE: The most recently written data rate value to either DRSR or CCR will be in effect.

5.3.2 DISKETTE DRIVE CONNECTOR

This system uses a standard 34-pin connector (refer to Figure 5-2 and Table 5-6 for the pinout) for diskette drives. Drive power is supplied through a separate connector.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─┐ ┌─┐ ┌─┐ ┌─┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ │
│ │2│ │4│ │6│ │8│ │10│ │12│ │14│ │16│ │18│ │20│ │22│ │24│ │26│ │28│ │30│ │32│ │34│ │
│ └─┘ └─┘ └─┘ └─┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ │
│ ┌─┐     ┌─┐ ┌─┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ ┌──┐ │
│ │1│     │5│ │7│ │9│  │11│ │13│ │15│ │17│ │19│ │21│ │23│ │25│ │27│ │29│ │31│ │33│ │
│ └─┘     └─┘ └─┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ └──┘ │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
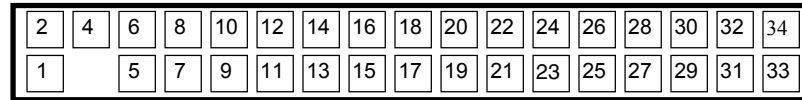
Figure 5-2. 34-Pin Diskette Drive Connector.

Table 5-6.
34-Pin Diskette Drive Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	GND	Ground	18	DIR-	Drive head direction control
2	LOW DEN-	Low density select	19	GND	Ground
3	---	(KEY)	20	STEP-	Drive head track step control
4	MEDIA ID-	Media identification	21	GND	Ground
5	GND	Ground	22	WR DATA-	Write data
6	DRV 4 SEL-	Drive 4 select	23	GND	Ground
7	GND	Ground	24	WR ENABLE-	Enable for WR DATA-
8	INDEX-	Media index is detected	25	GND	Ground
9	GND	Ground	26	TRK 00-	Heads at track 00 indicator
10	MTR 1 ON-	Activates drive motor	27	GND	Ground
11	GND	Ground	28	WR PRTK-	Media write protect status
12	DRV 2 SEL-	Drive 2 select	29	GND	Ground
13	GND	Ground	30	RD DATA-	Data and clock read off disk
14	DRV 1 SEL-	Drive 1 select	31	GND	Ground
15	GND	Ground	32	SIDE SEL-	Head select (side 0 or 1)
16	MTR 2 ON-	Activates drive motor	33	GND	Ground
17	GND	Ground	34	DSK CHG-	Drive door opened indicator

5.4   SERIAL INTERFACE

All models include two serial interfaces to transmit and receive asynchronous serial data with external devices. The serial interface function is provided by the LPC47B357 I/O controller component that includes two NS16C550-compatible UARTs.

Each UART supports the standard baud rates up through 115200, and also special high speed rates of 239400 and 460800 baud. The baud rate of the UART is typically set to match the capability of the connected device. While most baud rates may be set at runtime, **baud rates 230400 and 460800 must be set during the configuration phase.**

5.4.1   RS-232 INTERFACE

On the legacy-light system, the UART is associated with a DB-9 connector that complies with EIA standard RS-232-C. The DB-9 connector is shown in the following figure and the pinout of the connector is listed in Table 5-5.
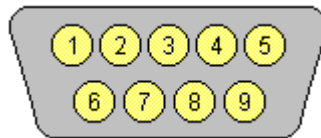

Figure 5-3.   Serial Interface Connector (Male DB-9 as viewed from rear of chassis)

Table 5-7.
DB-9 Serial Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	CD	Carrier Detect	6	DSR	Data Set Ready
2	RX Data	Receive Data	7	RTS	Request To Send
3	TX Data	Transmit Data	8	CTS	Clear To Send
4	DTR	Data Terminal Ready	9	RI	Ring Indicator
5	GND	Ground	--	--	--

The standard RS-232-C limitation of 50 feet (or less) of cable between the DTE (computer) and DCE (modem) should be followed to minimize transmission errors. Higher baud rates may require shorter cables.

5.4.2 COM1 PORT HEADER

The Small Form Factor system board includes a header that connects to the COM1 port's DB-9 connector on the rear chassis I/O panel through a cable assembly. The header pinout is shown in the following figure:



```
CD    1  ○  ○   6 DSR
RX Data 2  ○  ○   7 RTS
TX Data 3  ○  ○   8 CTS
DTR   4  ○  ○   9 RI
Gnd   5  ○
```
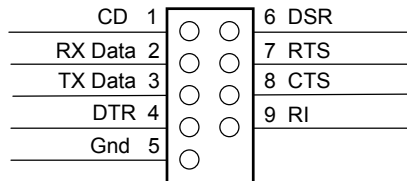
Figure 5-4. COM1 Serial Interface Header (Small Form Factor system board only)

5.4.3 SERIAL INTERFACE PROGRAMMING

Programming the serial interfaces consists of configuration, which occurs during POST, and control, which occurs during runtime.

5.4.3.1 Serial Interface Configuration

The serial interface must be configured for a specific address range (COM1, COM2, etc.) and also must be activated before it can be used. Address selection and activation of the serial interface are affected through the PnP configuration registers of the LPC47B357 I/O controller.
The serial interface configuration registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-8.
Serial Interface Configuration Registers

Index Address	Function	R/W
30h	Activate	R/W
60h	Base Address MSB	R/W
61h	Base Address LSB	R/W
70h	Interrupt Select	R/W
F0h	Mode Register	R/W

NOTE:
    Refer to LPC47B357 data sheet for detailed register information.

5.4.3.2 Serial Interface Control

The BIOS function INT 14 provides basic control of the serial interface. The serial interface can be directly controlled by software through the I/O-mapped registers listed in Table 5-9.

Table 5-9.
Serial Interface Control Registers

COM1 Addr.	COM2 Addr.	Register	R/W
3F8h	2F8h	Receive Data Buffer	R
		Transmit Data Buffer	W
		Baud Rate Divisor Register 0 (when bit 7 of Line Control Reg. Is set)	W
3F9h	2F9h	Baud Rate Divisor Register 1 (when bit 7 of Line Control Reg. Is set)	W
		Interrupt Enable Register	R/W
3FAh	2FAh	Interrupt ID Register	R
		FIFO Control Register	W
3FBh	2FBh	Line Control Register	R/W
3FCh	2FCh	Modem Control Register	R/W
3FDh	2FDh	Line Status Register	R
3FEh	2FEh	Modem Status	R

5.5   PARALLEL INTERFACE

The legacy-light models include a parallel interface for connection to a peripheral device that has a compatible interface, the most common being a printer. The parallel interface function is integrated into theLPC47B357 I/O controller component and provides bi-directional 8-bit parallel data transfers with a peripheral device.   The parallel interface supports three main modes of operation:

♦ Standard Parallel Port (SPP) mode
♦ Enhanced Parallel Port (EPP) mode
♦ Extended Capabilities Port (ECP) mode

These three modes (and their submodes) provide complete support as specified for an IEEE 1284 parallel port.

5.5.1 STANDARD PARALLEL PORT MODE

The Standard Parallel Port (SPP) mode uses software-based protocol and includes two sub-modes of operation, compatible and extended, both of which can provide data transfers up to 150 KB/s. In the compatible mode, CPU write data is simply presented on the eight data lines. A CPU read of the parallel port yields the last data byte that was written.

The following steps define the standard procedure for communicating with a printing device:

1. The system checks the Printer Status register. If the Busy, Paper Out, or Printer Fault signals are indicated as being active, the system either waits for a status change or generates an error message.
2. The system sends a byte of data to the Printer Data register, then pulses the printer STROBE signal (through the Printer Control register) for at least 500 ns.
3. The system then monitors the Printer Status register for acknowledgment of the data byte before sending the next byte.

In extended mode, a direction control bit (CTR 37Ah, bit <5>) controls the latching of output data while allowing a CPU read to fetch data present on the data lines, thereby providing bi-directional parallel transfers to occur.

The SPP mode uses three registers for operation: the Data register (DTR), the Status register (STR) and the Control register (CTR). Address decoding in SPP mode includes address lines A0 and A1.

5.5.2 ENHANCED PARALLEL PORT MODE

In Enhanced Parallel Port (EPP) mode, increased data transfers are possible (up to 2 MB/s) due to a hardware protocol that provides automatic address and strobe generation. EPP revisions 1.7 and 1.9 are both supported. For the parallel interface to be initialized for EPP mode, a negotiation phase is entered to detect whether or not the connected peripheral is compatible with EPP mode. If compatible, then EPP mode can be used. In EPP mode, system timing is closely coupled to EPP timing. A watchdog timer is used to prevent system lockup.

Five additional registers are available in EPP mode to handle 16- and 32-bit CPU accesses with the parallel interface. Address decoding includes address lines A0, A1, and A2.

5.5.3 EXTENDED CAPABILITIES PORT MODE

The Extended Capabilities Port (ECP) mode, like EPP, also uses a hardware protocol-based design that supports transfers up to 2 MB/s. Automatic generation of addresses and strobes as well as Run Length Encoding (RLE) decompression is supported by ECP mode. The ECP mode includes a bi-directional FIFO buffer that can be accessed by the CPU using DMA or programmed I/O. For the parallel interface to be initialized for ECP mode, a negotiation phase is entered to detect whether or not the connected peripheral is compatible with ECP mode. If compatible, then ECP mode can be used.

Ten control registers are available in ECP mode to handle transfer operations. In accessing the control registers, the base address is determined by address lines A2-A9, with lines A0, A1, and A10 defining the offset address of the control register. Registers used for FIFO operations are accessed at their base address + 400h (i.e., if configured for LPT1, then 378h + 400h = 778h).

The ECP mode includes several sub-modes as determined by the Extended Control register. Two submodes of ECP allow the parallel port to be controlled by software. In these modes, the FIFO is cleared and not used, and DMA and RLE are inhibited.

5.5.4 PARALLEL INTERFACE PROGRAMMING

Programming the parallel interface consists of configuration, which typically occurs during POST, and control, which occurs during runtime.

5.5.4.1 Parallel Interface Configuration

The parallel interface must be configured for a specific address range (LPT1, LPT2, etc.) and also must be enabled before it can be used. When configured for EPP or ECP mode, additional considerations must be taken into account. Address selection, enabling, and EPP/ECP mode parameters of the parallel interface are affected through the PnP configuration registers of the LPC47B357 I/O controller. Address selection and enabling are automatically done by the BIOS during POST but can also be accomplished with the Setup utility and other software.

The parallel interface configuration registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-10.
Parallel Interface Configuration Registers

Index Address	Function	R/W	Reset Value
30h	Activate	R/W	00h
60h	Base Address MSB	R/W	00h
61h	Base Address LSB	R/W	00h
70h	Interrupt Select	R/W	00h
74h	DMA Channel Select	R/W	04h
F0h	Mode Register	R/W	00h
F1h	Mode Register 2	R/W	00h

5.5.4.2 Parallel Interface Control

The BIOS function INT 17 provides simplified control of the parallel interface. Basic functions such as initialization, character printing, and printer status are provide by subfunctions of INT 17. The parallel interface is controllable by software through a set of I/O mapped registers. The number and type of registers available depends on the mode used (SPP, EPP, or ECP). Table 5-11 lists the parallel registers and associated functions based on mode.

Table 5-11.
Parallel Interface Control Registers

I/O Address	Register	SPP Mode Ports	EPP Mode Ports	ECP Mode Ports
Base	Data	LPT1,2,3	LPT1,2	LPT1,2,3
Base + 1h	Printer Status	LPT1,2,3	LPT1,2	LPT1,2,3
Base + 2h	Control	LPT1,2,3	LPT1,2	LPT1,2,3
Base + 3h	Address	--	LPT1,2	--
Base + 4h	Data Port 0	--	LPT1,2	--
Base + 5h	Data Port 1	--	LPT1,2	--
Base + 6h	Data Port 2	--	LPT1,2	--
Base + 7h	Data Port 3	--	LPT1,2	--
Base + 400h	Parallel Data FIFO	--	--	LPT1,2,3
Base + 400h	ECP Data FIFO	--	--	LPT1,2,3
Base + 400h	Test FIFO	--	--	LPT1,2,3
Base + 400h	Configuration Register A	--	--	LPT1,2,3
Base + 401h	Configuration Register B	--	--	LPT1,2,3
Base + 402h	Extended Control Register	--	--	LPT1,2,3

Base Address:
>   LPT1 = 378h
>   LPT2 = 278h
>   LPT3 = 3BCh

5.5.5 PARALLEL INTERFACE CONNECTOR

Figure 5-5 and Table 5-12 show the connector and pinout of the parallel interface connector. Note that some signals are redefined depending on the port's operational mode.
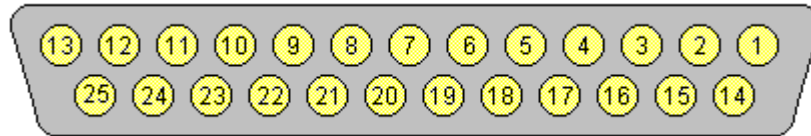

Figure 5-5. Parallel Interface Connector (Female DB-25 as viewed from rear of chassis)

Table 5-12.
DB-25 Parallel Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Function	Pin	Signal	Function
1	STB-	Strobe / Write [1]	14	LF-	Line Feed [2]
2	D0	Data 0	15	ERR-	Error [3]
3	D1	Data 1	16	INIT-	Initialize Paper [4]
4	D2	Data 2	17	SLCTIN-	Select In / Address. Strobe [1]
5	D3	Data 3	18	GND	Ground
6	D4	Data 4	19	GND	Ground
7	D5	Data 5	20	GND	Ground
8	D6	Data 6	21	GND	Ground
9	D7	Data 7	22	GND	Ground
10	ACK-	Acknowledge / Interrupt [1]	23	GND	Ground
11	BSY	Busy / Wait [1]	24	GND	Ground
12	PE	Paper End / User defined [1]	25	GND	Ground
13	SLCT	Select / User defined [1]	--	--	--

NOTES:
    [1] Standard and ECP mode function / EPP mode function
    [2] EPP mode function: Data Strobe
       ECP modes: Auto Feed or Host Acknowledge
    [3] EPP mode: user defined
       ECP modes:Fault or Peripheral Req.
    [4] EPP mode: Reset
       ECP modes: Initialize or Reverse Req.

5.6   KEYBOARD/POINTING DEVICE INTERFACE

The keyboard/pointing device interface function is provided by the LPC47B357 I/O controller component, which integrates 8042-compatible keyboard controller logic (hereafter referred to as simply the "8042") to communicate with the keyboard and pointing device using bi-directional serial data transfers. The 8042 handles scan code translation and password lock protection for the keyboard as well as communications with the pointing device. This section describes the interface itself. The keyboard is discussed in the Appendix C.

5.6.1   KEYBOARD INTERFACE OPERATION

The data/clock link between the 8042 and the keyboard is uni-directional for Keyboard Mode 1 and bi-directional for Keyboard Modes 2 and 3. (These modes are discussed in detail in Appendix C). This section describes Mode 2 (the default) mode of operation.

Communication between the keyboard and the 8042 consists of commands (originated by either the keyboard or the 8042) and scan codes from the keyboard. A command can request an action or indicate status. The keyboard interface uses IRQ1 to get the attention of the CPU.

The 8042 can send a command to the keyboard at any time. When the 8042 wants to send a command, the 8042 clamps the clock signal from the keyboard for a minimum of 60 us. If the keyboard is transmitting data at that time, the transmission is allowed to finish. When the 8042 is ready to transmit to the keyboard, the 8042 pulls the data line low, causing the keyboard to respond by pulling the clock line low as well, allowing the start bit to be clocked out of the 8042. The data is then transferred serially, LSb first, to the keyboard (Figure 5-6). An odd parity bit is sent following the eighth data bit. After the parity bit is received, the keyboard pulls the data line low and clocks this condition to the 8042. When the keyboard receives the stop bit, the clock line is pulled low to inhibit the keyboard and allow it to process the data.

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum
Tcy (Cycle Time)	0 us	80 us
Tcl (Clock Low)	25 us	35 us
Tch (Clock High)	25 us	45 us
Th (Data Hold)	0 us	25 us
Tss (Stop Bit Setup)	8 us	20 us
Tsh (Stop Bit Hold)	15 us	25 us
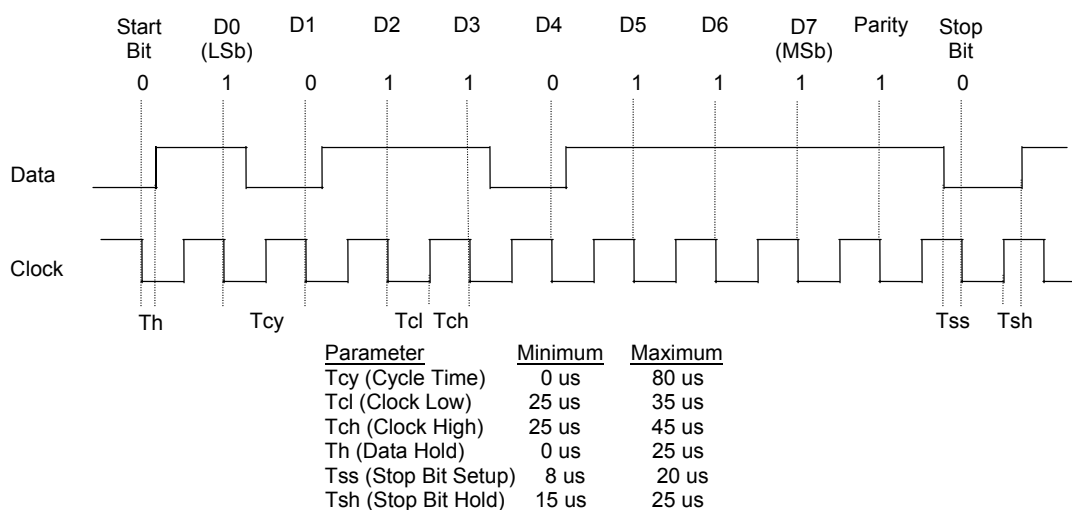
Figure 5-6. 8042-To-Keyboard Transmission of Code EDh, Timing Diagram

Control of the data and clock signals is shared by the 8042and the keyboard depending on the originator of the transferred data. Note that the clock signal is always generated by the keyboard. After the keyboard receives a command from the 8042, the keyboard returns an ACK code. If a parity error or timeout occurs, a Resend command is sent to the 8042.

Table 5-13 lists and describes commands that can be issued by the 8042 to the keyboard.

Table 5-13.
8042-To-Keyboard Commands

Command	Value	Description
Set/Reset Status Indicators	EDh	Enables LED indicators. Value EDh is followed by an option byte that specifies the indicator as follows: Bits <7..3> not used Bit <2>, Caps Lock (0 = off, 1 = on) Bit <1>, NUM Lock (0 = off, 1 = on) Bit <0>, Scroll Lock (0 = off, 1 = on)
Echo	EEh	Keyboard returns EEh when previously enabled.
Invalid Command	EFh/F1h	These commands are not acknowledged.
Select Alternate Scan Codes	F0h	Instructs the keyboard to select another set of scan codes and sends an option byte after ACK is received: 01h = Mode 1 02h = Mode 2 03h = Mode 3
Read ID	F2h	Instructs the keyboard to stop scanning and return two keyboard ID bytes.
Set Typematic Rate/Display	F3h	Instructs the keyboard to change typematic rate and delay to specified values: Bit <7>, Reserved - 0 Bits <6,5>, Delay Time 00 = 250 ms 01 = 500 ms 10 = 750 ms 11 = 1000 ms Bits <4..0>, Transmission Rate: 00000 = 30.0 ms 00001 = 26.6 ms 00010 = 24.0 ms 00011 = 21.8 ms : 11111 = 2.0 ms
Enable	F4h	Instructs keyboard to clear output buffer and last typematic key and begin key scanning.
Default Disable	F5h	Resets keyboard to power-on default state and halts scanning pending next 8042 command.
Set Default	F6h	Resets keyboard to power-on default state and enable scanning.
Set Keys - Typematic	F7h	Clears keyboard buffer and sets default scan code set. [1]
Set Keys - Make/Brake	F8h	Clears keyboard buffer and sets default scan code set. [1]
Set Keys - Make	F9h	Clears keyboard buffer and sets default scan code set. [1]
Set Keys - Typematic/Make/Brake	FAh	Clears keyboard buffer and sets default scan code set. [1]
Set Type Key - Typematic	FBh	Clears keyboard buffer and prepares to receive key ID. [1]
Set Type Key - Make/Brake	FCh	Clears keyboard buffer and prepares to receive key ID. [1]
Set Type Key - Make	FDh	Clears keyboard buffer and prepares to receive key ID. [1]
Resend	FEh	8042 detected error in keyboard transmission.
Reset	FFh	Resets program, runs keyboard BAT, defaults to Mode 2.

Note:
    [1] Used in Mode 3 only.

5.6.2 POINTING DEVICE INTERFACE OPERATION

The pointing device (typically a mouse) connects to a 6-pin DIN-type connector that is identical to the keyboard connector both physically and electrically. The operation of the interface (clock and data signal control) is the same as for the keyboard. The pointing device interface uses the IRQ12 interrupt.

5.6.3 KEYBOARD/POINTING DEVICE INTERFACE PROGRAMMING

Programming the keyboard interface consists of configuration, which occurs during POST, and control, which occurs during runtime.

5.6.3.1 8042 Configuration

The keyboard/pointing device interface must be enabled and configured for a particular speed before it can be used. Enabling and speed parameters of the 8042 logic are affected through the PnP configuration registers of the LPC47B357 I/O controller. Enabling and speed control are automatically set by the BIOS during POST but can also be accomplished with the Setup utility and other software.

The keyboard interface configuration registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-14.
Keyboard Interface Configuration Registers

Index Address	Function	R/W
30h	Activate	R/W
70h	Primary Interrupt Select	R/W
72h	Secondary Interrupt Select	R/W
F0h	Reset and A20 Select	R/W

5.6.3.2 8042 Control

The BIOS function INT 16 is typically used for controlling interaction with the keyboard. Sub-functions of INT 16 conduct the basic routines of handling keyboard data (i.e., translating the keyboard's scan codes into ASCII codes). The keyboard/pointing device interface is accessed by the CPU through I/O mapped ports 60h and 64h, which provide the following functions:

♦ Output buffer reads
♦ Input buffer writes
♦ Status reads
♦ Command writes

Ports 60h and 64h can be accessed using the IN instruction for a read and the OUT instruction for a write. Prior to reading data from port 60h, the "Output Buffer Full" status bit (64h, bit <0>) should be checked to ensure data is available. Likewise, before writing a command or data, the "Input Buffer Empty" status bit (64h, bit <1>) should also be checked to ensure space is available.

I/O Port 60h

I/O port 60h is used for accessing the input and output buffers. This register is used to send and receive data from the keyboard and the pointing device. This register is also used to send the second byte of multi-byte commands to the 8042 and to receive responses from the 8042 for commands that require a response.

A read of 60h by the CPU yields the byte held in the output buffer. The output buffer holds data that has been received from the keyboard and is to be transferred to the system.

A CPU write to 60h places a data byte in the input byte buffer and sets the CMD/ DATA bit of the Status register to DATA. The input buffer is used for transferring data from the system to the keyboard. All data written to this port by the CPU will be transferred to the keyboard **except** bytes that follow a multibyte command that was written to 64h

I/O Port 64h

I/O port 64h is used for reading the status register and for writing commands. A read of 64h by the CPU will yield the status byte defined as follows:

Bit	Function
7..4	General Purpose Flags.
3	CMD/DATA Flag (reflects the state of A2 during a CPU write). 0 = Data 1 = Command
2	General Purpose Flag.
1	Input Buffer Full. Set (to 1) upon a CPU write. Cleared by IN A, DBB instruction.
0	Output Buffer Full (if set). Cleared by a CPU read of the buffer.

A CPU write to I/O port 64h places a command value into the input buffer and sets the CMD/DATA bit of the status register (bit <3>) to CMD.
Table 5-15 lists the commands that can be sent to the 8042 by the CPU. The 8042 uses IRQ1 for gaining the attention of the CPU.

Table 5-15.

CPU Commands To The 8042

Value	Command Description
20h	Put current command byte in port 60h.
60h	Load new command byte.
A4h	Test password installed. Tests whether or not a password is installed in the 8042: If FAh is returned, password is installed. If F1h is returned, no password is installed.
A5h	Load password. This multi-byte operation places a password in the 8042 using the following manner: 1. Write A5h to port 64h. 2. Write each character of the password in 9-bit scan code (translated) format to port 60h. 3. Write 00h to port 60h.
A6h	Enable security. This command places the 8042 in password lock mode following the A5h command. The correct password must then be entered before further communication with the 8042 is allowed.
A7h	Disable pointing device. This command sets bit <5> of the 8042 command byte, pulling the clock line of the pointing device interface low.
A8h	Enable pointing device. This command clears bit <5> of the 8042 command byte, activating the clock line of the pointing device interface.
A9h	Test the clock and data lines of the pointing device interface and place test results in the output buffer. 00h = No error detected 01h = Clock line stuck low 02h = Clock line stuck high 03h = Data line stuck low 04h = Data line stuck high
AAh	Initialization. This command causes the 8042 to inhibit the keyboard and pointing device and places 55h into the output buffer.
ABh	Test the clock and data lines of the keyboard interface and place test results in the output buffer. 00h = No error detected 01h = Clock line stuck low 02h = Clock line stuck high 03h = Data line stuck low 04h = Data line stuck high
ADh	Disable keyboard command (sets bit <4> of the 8042 command byte).
AEh	Enable keyboard command (clears bit <4> of the 8042 command byte).
C0h	Read input port of the 8042. This command directs the 8042 to transfer the contents of the input port to the output buffer so that they can be read at port 60h.
C2h	Poll Input Port High. This command directs the 8042 to place bits <7..4> of the input port into the upper half of the status byte on a continous basis until another command is received.
C3h	Poll Input Port Low. This command directs the 8042 to place bits <3..0> of the input port into the lower half of the status byte on a continous basis until another command is received.
D0h	Read output port. This command directs the 8042 to transfer the contents of the output port to the output buffer so that they can be read at port 60h.
D1h	Write output port. This command directs the 8042 to place the next byte written to port 60h into the output port (only bit <1> can be changed).
D2h	Echo keyboard data. Directs the 8042 to send back to the CPU the next byte written to port 60h as if it originated from the keyboard. No 11-to-9 bit translation takes place but an interrupt (IRQ1) is generated if enabled.
D3h	Echo pointing device data. Directs the 8042 to send back to the CPU the next byte written to port 60h as if it originated from the pointing device. An interrupt (IRQ12) is generated if enabled.
D4h	Write to pointing device. Directs the 8042 to send the next byte written to 60h to the pointing device.
E0h	Read test inputs. Directs the 8042 to transfer the test bits 1 and 0 into bits <1,0> of the output buffer.
F0h- FFh	Pulse output port. Controls the pulsing of bits <3..0> of the output port (0 = pulse, 1 = don't pulse). Note that pulsing bit <0> will reset the system.

5.6.4 KEYBOARD/POINTING DEVICE INTERFACE CONNECTOR

The legacy-light model provides separate PS/2 connectors for the keyboard and pointing device. Both connectors are identical both physically and electrically. Figure 5-7 and Table 5-16 show the connector and pinout of the keyboard/pointing device interface connectors.
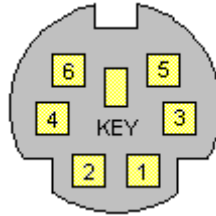
Figure 5-7. Keyboard or Pointing Device Interface Connector
(as viewed from rear of chassis)

Table 5-16.
Keyboard/Pointing Device Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	DATA	Data	4	+ 5 VDC	Power
2	NC	Not Connected	5	CLK	Clock
3	GND	Ground	6	NC	Not Connected

5.7   UNIVERSAL SERIAL BUS INTERFACE

The Universal Serial Bus (USB) interface provides asynchronous/isochronous data transfers of up to 12 Mb/s with compatible peripherals such as keyboards, printers, or modems. This high-speed interface supports hot-plugging of compatible devices, making possible system configuration changes without powering down or even rebooting systems.

> **NOTE:** It is recommended to run the Windows 98 (or later) operating system when using USB peripherals, **especially a USB keyboard and USB mouse**. Problems may be encountered when using USB devices with a system running Windows 95, although some peripherals (such as a modem and/or a camera) may operate satisfactorily.

As shown in Figure 5-8, the USB interface is provided by the 82801 ICH2 component and a USB hub component. For more information on the USB interface refer to the following web site:
http://www.usb.org
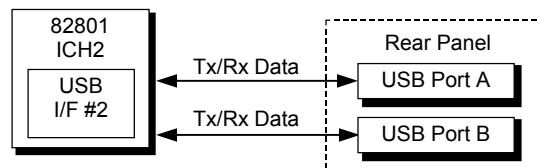
Figure 5-8.   USB I/F, Block Diagram

5.7.1 USB DATA FORMATS

The USB I/F uses non-return-to-zero inverted (NRZI) encoding for data transmissions, in which a 1 is represented by no change (between bit times) in signal level and a 0 is represented by a change in signal level. Bit stuffing is employed prior to NRZ1 encoding so that in the event a string of 1's is transmitted (normally resulting in a steady signal level) a 0 is inserted after every six consecutive 1's to ensure adequate signal transitions in the data stream.

The USB transmissions consist of packets using one of four types of formats (Figure 5-9) that include two or more of seven field types.

♦ Sync Field – 8-bit field that starts every packet and is used by the receiver to align the incoming signal with the local clock.

♦ Packet Identifier (PID) Field – 8-bit field sent with every packet to identify the attributes (in. out, start-of-frame (SOF), setup, data, acknowledge, stall, preamble) and the degree of error correction to be applied.

♦ Address Field – 7-bit field that provides source information required in token packets.

♦ Endpoint Field – 4-bit field that provides destination information required in token packets.

♦ Frame Field – 11-bit field sent in Start-of-Frame (SOF) packets that are incremented by the host and sent only at the start of each frame.

♦ Data Field – 0-1023-byte field of data.

♦ Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Field – 5- or 16-bit field used to check transmission integrity.

	Sync Field (8 bits)	PID Field (8 bits)	Addr. Field (7 bits)	ENDP. Field (4 bits)	CRC Field (5 bits)
Token Packet					

	Sync Field (8 bits)	PID Field (8 bits)	Frame Field (11 bits)	CRC Field (5 bits)
SOF Packet				

	Sync Field (8 bits)	PID Field (8 bits)	Data Field (0-1023 bytes)	CRC Field (16 bits)
Data Packet				

	Sync Field (8 bits)	PID Field (8 bits)
Handshake Packet		

Figure 5-9. USB Packet Formats

Data is transferred LSb first. A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is applied to all packets (except a handshake packet). A packet causing a CRC error is generally completely ignored by the receiver.

5.7.2 USB PROGRAMMING

Programming the USB interface consists of configuration, which typically occurs during POST, and control, which occurs at runtime.

5.7.2.1 USB Configuration

The USB interface functions as a PCI device (31) within the 82801 component (function 2) and is configured using PCI Configuration Registers as listed in Table 5-17.

Table 5-17.
USB Interface Configuration Registers

PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00, 01h	Vender ID	8086h	0Eh	Header Type	00h
02, 03h	Device ID	2444h	20-23h	I/O Space Base Address	1
04, 05h	PCI Command	0000h	2C, 2Dh	Sub. Vender ID	00h
06, 07h	PCI Status	0280h	3Ch	Interrupt Line	00h
08h	Revision ID	00h	3Dh	Interrupt Pin	03h
09h	Programming I/F	00h	60h	Serial Bus Release No.	10h
0Ah	Sub Class Code	03h	C0, C1h	USB Leg. Kybd./Ms. Cntrl.	2000h
0Bh	Base Class Code	0Ch	C4h	USB Resume Enable	00h

5.7.2.2 USB Control

The USB is controlled through I/O registers as listed in table 5-18.

Table 5-18.
USB Control Registers

I/O Addr.	Register	Default Value
00, 01h	Command	0000h
02, 03h	Status	0000h
04, 05h	Interupt Enable	0000h
06, 07	Frame Number	0000h
08, 0B	Frame List Base Address	0000h
0Ch	Start of Frame Modify	40h
10, 11h	Port 1 Status/Control	0080h
12, 13h	Port 2 Status/Control	0080h
18h	Test Data	00h

5.7.3 USB CONNECTOR

These systems provide two series-A connectors on the rear panel.
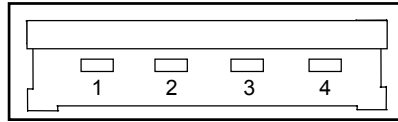
Figure 5-10.   Universal Serial Bus Connector (as viewed from the rear panel)

Table 5-19.
USB Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	Vcc	+5 VDC	3	USB+	Data (plus)
2	USB-	Data (minus)	4	GND	Ground

5.7.4 USB CABLE DATA

The recommended cable length between the host and the USB device should be no longer than sixteen feet for full-channel (12 MB/s) operation, depending on cable specification (see following table).

Table 5-20.
USB Cable Length Data

Conductor Size	Resistance	Maximum Length
20 AWG	0.036 Ω	16.4 ft (5.00 m)
22 AWG	0.057 Ω	9.94 ft (3.03 m)
24 AWG	0.091 Ω	6.82 ft (2.08 m)
26 AWG	0.145 Ω	4.30 ft (1.31 m)
28 AWG	0.232 Ω	2.66 ft (0.81 m)

NOTE:
   For sub-channel (1.5 MB/s) operation and/or when using sub-standard cable
   shorter lengths may be allowable and/or necessary.

The shield, chassis ground, and power ground should be tied together at the host end but left unconnected at the device end to avoid ground loops.

Color code:

Signal	Insulation color
Data +	Green
Data -	White
Vcc	Red
Ground	Black

5.8   AUDIO SUBSYSTEM

The systems covered in this guide come configured with one of two levels of audio support:

♦ Legacy PC-beep audio support
♦ Embedded AC'97 audio support

5.8.1 FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS

A block diagram of the audio subsystem is shown in Figure 5-11. Systems without embedded
AC'97 support provide only legacy PC-beep audio and have the speaker (board-mounted on the
Small Form Factor, chassis-mounted on the Desktop EN Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower)
driven directly by the audio output of the ICH2 as shown in the upper third of the diagram. These
systems may be upgraded by adding a PCI audio card.

Systems with embedded AC'97 audio support use the AC'97 Audio Controller of the 82801 ICH2
component to access and control an Analog Devices AD1885 Audio Codec, which provides the
analog-to-digital (ADC) and digital-to-analog (DAC) conversions as well as the mixing functions.
All control functions such as volume, audio source selection, and sampling rate are controlled
through software over the PCI bus through the AC97 Audio Controller of the 82801 ICH2.
Control data and digital audio streams (record and playback) are transferred between the Audio
Controller and the Audio Codec over the AC97 Link Bus.

Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems implement Business Audio, which has the
codec analog output applied to a 3-watt amplifier that drives a 16-ohm speaker. Small Form
Factor systems feature Premier Sound, which includes a 6-level equalizer that compensates for
chassis acoustics and a low-distortion 8-watt amplifier driving a speaker.

The analog interfaces allowing connection to external audio devices include:

Mic In - This input uses a three-conductor (stereo) mini-jack that is specifically designed for
connection of a condenser microphone with an impedance of 10-K ohms. This is the default
recording input after a system reset.

Line In - This input uses a three-conductor (stereo) mini-jack that is specifically designed for
connection of a high-impedance (10k-ohm) audio source such as a tape deck.

Headphones Out - This input uses a three-conductor (stereo) mini-jack that is designed for
connecting a set of 16-ohm (nom.) stereo headphones or powered speakers. Plugging into the
Headphones jack mutes the signal to the internal speaker and, on SFF systems, the Line Out jack
as well..

Line Out (SFF only) - This output uses a three-conductor (stereo) mini-jack for connecting left
and right channel line-level signals (20-K ohm impedance). A typical connection would be to a
tape recorder's Line In (Record In) jacks, an amplifier's Line In jacks, or to powered speakers that
contain amplifiers. Plugging into the Line Out mutes the internal speaker.
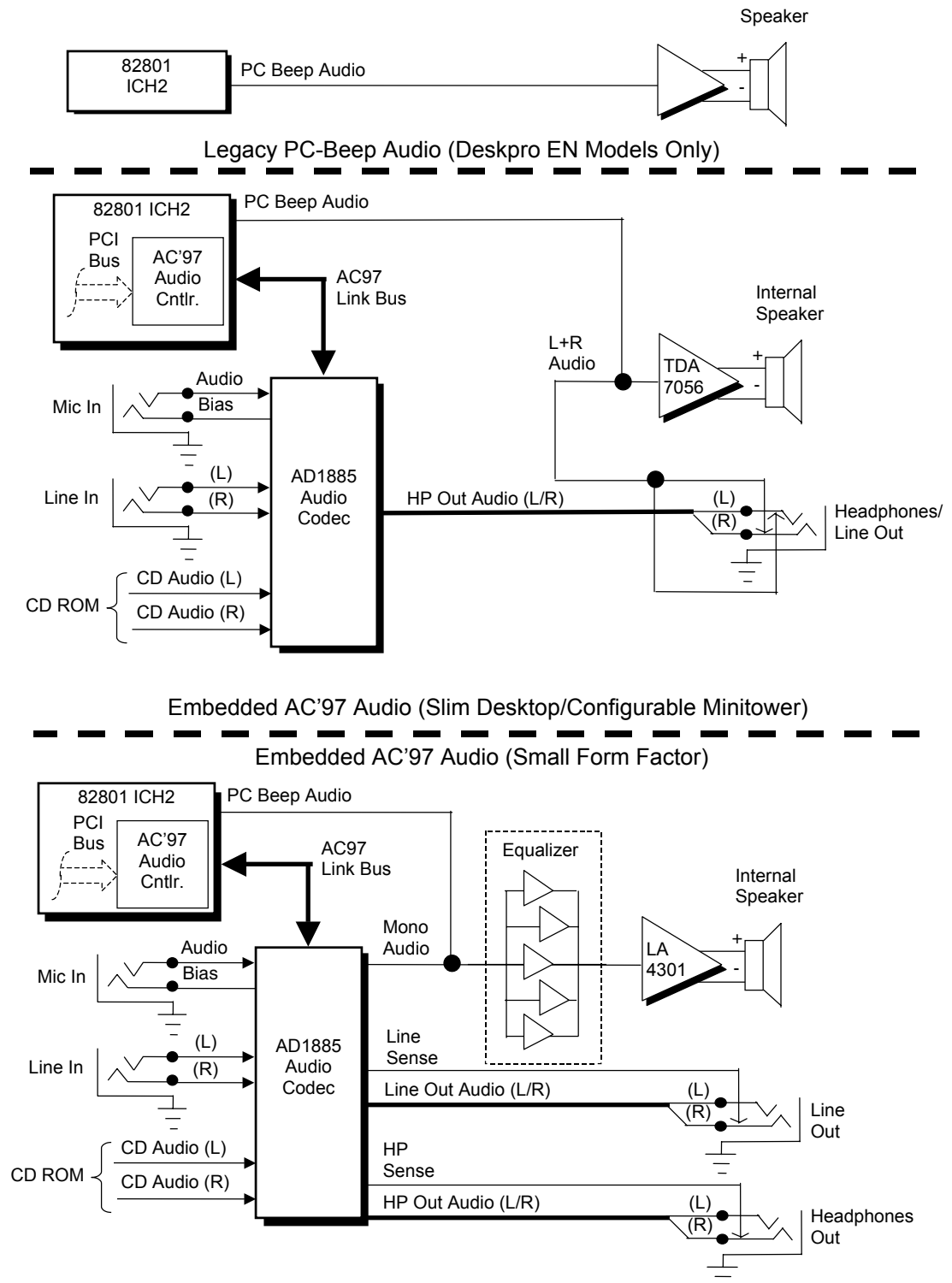
**Figure 5-11.** Audio Subsystem Functional Block Diagram

5.8.2 AC97 AUDIO CONTROLLER

The AC97 Audio Controller is a PCI device (device 31/function 5) that is integrated into the 82801 ICH component and supports the following functions:

♦ Read/write access to audio codec registers
♦ 16-bit stereo PCM output @ up to 48 KHz sampling
♦ 16-bit stereo PCM input @ up to 48 KHz sampling
♦ Acoustic echo correction for microphone
♦ AC'97 Link Bus
♦ ACPI power management

5.8.3 AC97 LINK BUS

The audio controller and the audio codec communicate over a five-signal AC97 Link Bus (Figure 5-12). The AC97 Link Bus includes two serial data lines (SD OUT/SD IN) that transfer control and PCM audio data serially to and from the audio codec using a time-division multiplexed (TDM) protocol. The data lines are qualified by a 12.288 MHz BIT_CLK signal driven by the audio codec. Data is transferred in frames synchronized by the 48-KHz SYNC signal, which is derived from the clock signal and driven by the audio controller. The SYNC signal is high during the frame's tag phase then falls during T17and remains low during the data phase. A frame consists of one 16-bit tag slot followed by twelve 20-bit data slots. When asserted (typically during a power cycle), the RESET- signal (not shown) will reset all audio registers to their default values.
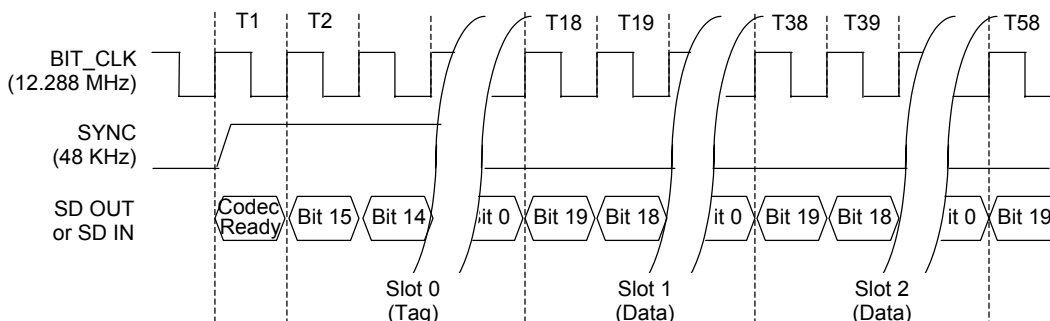
Slot	Description
0	Bit 15: Frame valid bit Bits 14-3: Slots 1-12 valid bits Bits 2-0: Codec ID
1	Command address: Bit 19, R/W; Bits 18..12, reg. Index; Bits 11..0, reserved.
2	Command data
3	Bits 19-4: PCM audio data, left channel (SD OUT, playback; SD IN, record) Bits 3-0 all zeros
4	Bits 19-4: PCM audio data, right channel (SD OUT, playback; SD IN, record) Bits 3-0 all zeros
5	Modem codec data (not used in this system)
6-11	Reserved
12	I/O control

Figure 5-12. AC'97 Link Bus Protocol

5.8.4 AUDIO CODEC

The audio codec provides pulse code modulation (PCM) coding and decoding of audio information as well as the selection and/or mixing of analog channels. As shown in Figure 5-13, analog audio from a microphone, tape, or CD can be selected and, if to be recorded (saved) onto a disk drive, routed through an analog-to-digital converter (ADC). The resulting left and right PCM record data are muxed into a time-division-multiplexed (TDM) data stream (SD IN signal) that is routed to the audio controller. Playback (PB) audio takes the reverse path from the audio controller to the audio codec as SD OUT data and is decoded and processed by the digital-to-analog converter (DAC). The codec supports simultaneous record and playback of stereo (left and right) audio. The Sample Rate Generator may be set for sampling frequencies up to 48 KHz.

Analog audio may then be routed through 3D stereo enhancement processor or bypassed to the output selector (SEL). The integrated analog mixer provides the computer control-console functionality handling multiple audio inputs.
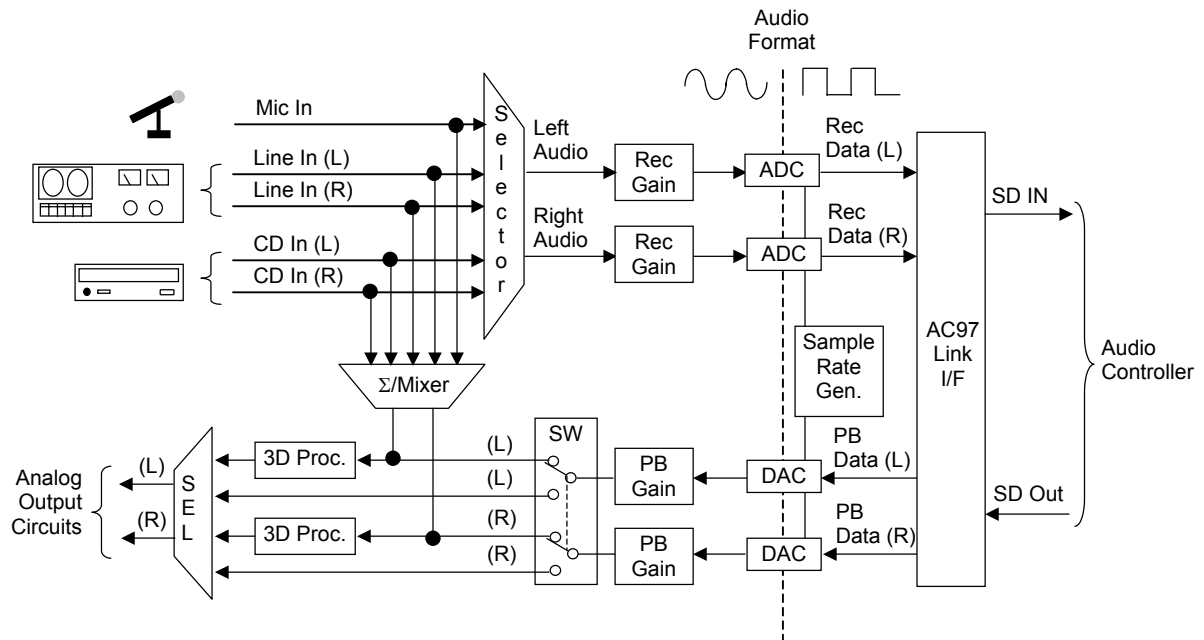
Figure 5-13.   AD1885 Audio Codec Functional Block Diagram

All inputs and outputs are two-channel stereo except for the microphone input, which is inputted as a single-channel but mixed internally onto both left and right channels. The microphone input is the default active input. All block functions are controlled through index-addressed registers of the codec.

5.8.5 AUDIO PROGRAMMING

Audio subsystem programming consists configuration, typically accomplished during POST, and control, which occurs during runtime.

5.8.5.1 Audio Configuration

The audio subsystem is configured according to PCI protocol through the AC'97 audio controller function of the 82801 ICH2. Table 5-21 lists the PCI configuration registers of the audio subsystem.

Table 5-21.
AC'97 Audio Controller
PCI Configuration Registers (82801 Device 31/Function 5)

PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Value on Reset	PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Value on Reset
00-01h	Vender ID	8086h	14-17h	Native Audio Bus Mstr. Addr.	1
02-03h	Device ID	2445h	18-1Bh	Reserved	1h
04-05h	PCI Command	0000h	1C-2Bh	Reserved	1h
06-07h	PCI Status	0280h	2C-2Dh	Subsystem Vender ID	0000h
08h	Revision ID	XXh	2E-2Fh	Subsystem ID	0000h
09h	Programming	00h	30-3Bh	Reserved	--
0Ah	Sub-Class	01h	3Ch	Interrupt Line	00h
0Bh	Base Class Code	04h	3Dh	Interrupt Pin	02h
0Eh	Header Type	00h	3E-FFh	Reserved	0's
10-13h	Native Audio Mixer Base Addr.	1	--	--	--

5.8.5.2 Audio Control

The audio subsystem is controlled through a set of indexed registers that physically reside in the audio codec . The register addresses are decoded by the audio controller and forwarded to the audio codec over the AC97 Link Bus previously described. The audio codec's control registers (Table 5-22) are mapped into 64 kilobytes of variable I/O space.

Table 5-22.
AC'97 Audio Codec Control Registers

Offset Addr. / Register	Value On Reset	Offset Addr. / Register	Value On Reset	Offset Addr. / Register	Value On Reset
00h Reset	0100h	14h Video Vol.	8808h	28h Ext. Audio ID.	0001h
02h Master Vol.	8000h	16h Aux Vol.	8808h	2Ah Ext. Audio Ctrl/Sts	0000h
04h Reserved	X	18h PCM Out Vol.	8808h	2Ch PCM DAC SRate	BB80h
06h Mono Mstr. Vol.	8000h	1Ah Record Sel.	0000h	32h PCM ADC SRate	BB80h
08h Reserved	X	1Ch Record Gain	8000h	34h Reserved	X
0Ah PC Beep Vol.	8000h	1Eh Reserved	X	72h Reserved	X
0Ch Phone In Vol.	8008h	20h Gen. Purpose	0000h	74h Serial Config.	7x0xh
0Eh Mic Vol.	8008h	22h 3D Control	0000h	76h Misc. Control Bits	0404h
10h Line In Vol.	8808h	24h Reserved	X	7Ch Vender ID1	4144h
12h CD Vol.	8808h	26h Pwr Mgnt.	000xh	7Eh Vender ID2	5340h

5.8.6 AUDIO SPECIFICATIONS

The specifications for the integrated AC97 audio subsystem are listed in Table 5-23.

Table 5-23.
AC97 Audio Subsystem Specifications

Paramemter	Measurement
Sampling Rate	5.51 KHz to 44 KHz
Resolution	16 bit
Nominal Input Voltage:	
Mic In (w/+20 db gain)	.283 Vp-p
Line In	2.83 Vp-p
Impedance:	
Mic In	1 K ohms (nom)
Line In	10 K ohms (min)
Line Out	800 ohms
Signal-to-Noise Ratio (input to Line Out)	90 db (nom)
Max. Power Output (with 10% THD):	
Small Form Factor	8 watts (into 8 ohms)
Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower	3 watts (into 16 ohms)
Input Gain Attenuation Range	46.5 db
Master Volume Range	-94.5 db
Frequency Response:	
Codec	20-20 KHz
Speaker (Small Form Factor)	450 - 4000 Hz

5.9   NETWORK INTERFACE CONTROLLER

These systems include a network interface controller (NIC) consisting of a 82562-equivalent controller integrated into the 82801BA ICH2 component coupled with a physical interface (PHY) component and an RJ-45 jack with integral status LEDs (Figure 5-14). The support firmware is contained in the system (BIOS) ROM. The NIC can operate in half- or full-duplex modes, and provides auto-negotiation of both mode and speed. Half-duplex operation features an Intel-proprietary collision reduction mechanism while full-duplex operation follows the IEEE 802.3x flow control specification. Transmit and receive FIFOs of 3 kilobytes each reduce the chance of overrun while waiting for bus access.

LED	Function
Green	Activity/Link: Indicates network activity and link pulse reception.
Yellow	Speed: Indicates link detection in 100 MB/s mode (always on if 100Base-Tx is forced).
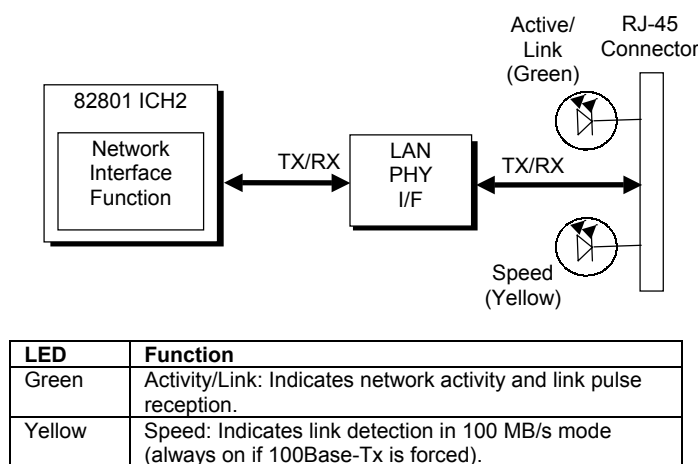
Figure 5-14.   Network Interface Controller Block Diagram

The Network Interface Controller includes the following features:

♦   Fast Ethernet controller with 32-bit architecture and 3-KB TX/RX buffers.
♦   Dual-mode support with auto-switching between 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX.
♦   Power down and Wake up support in both APM and ACPI environments (PME- and WOL).
♦   Alert-on-LAN (AOL v1.0) support.
♦   Link and Activity LED indicator drivers
♦   AOL support for upgrade card

The controller features high and low priority queues and provides priority-packet processing for networks that can support that feature. The controller's micro-machine processes transmit and receive frames independently and concurrently. Receive runt (under-sized) frames are not passed on as faulty data but discarded by the controller, which also directly handles such errors as collision detection or data under-run.

The NIC uses 3.3 VDC auxiliary power, which allows the controller to support Wake-On-LAN (WOL) and Alert-On-LAN (AOL) functions while the main system is powered down.

> ⚠ **NOTE:** For the WOL and AOL features to function as described in the following paragraphs, the system unit must be plugged into a live AC outlet. Controlling unit power through a switchable power strip will, with the strip turned off, disable WOL and AOL functionality.

5.9.1 WAKE ON LAN SUPPORT

The NIC supports the Wired-for-Management (WfM) standard of Wake-On-LAN (WOL) that allows the system to be booted up from a powered-down or low-power condition upon the detection of special packets received over a network. The NIC receives 3.3 VDC auxiliary power while the system unit is powered down in order to process special packets. The detection of a Magic Packet by the NIC results in the PME- signal on the PCI bus to be asserted, initiating system wake-up from an ACPI S1 or S3 state.

5.9.2 ALERT ON LAN SUPPORT

Alert-On-LAN (AOL) support allows the NIC to communicate the occurrence of certain events over a network even while the system unit is powered off. In a system-off (powered down) condition the network function of the 82801 ICH2 component receives auxiliary +3.3 VDC power (derived from the +5 VDC auxiliary power from the power supply assembly). Certain events (listed in Table 5-24) will result in the network function of the ICH2 to transmit an appropriate pre-constructed message over the network to a system management console.

Reportable AOL events are listed in the following table:

Table 5-24.
AOL Events

Event	Description
BIOS Failure	System fails to boot successfully.
OS Problem	System fails to load operating system after POST.
Missing/Faulty Processor	Processor fails to fetch first instruction.
Thermal Condition	Thermal ASIC reports high temperature.
Heartbeat	Indication of system's network presence (sent approximately every 30 seconds in normal operation).

The AOL implementation requirements are as follows:
1. Intel PRO/100 VM Network Connection drivers 3.80 or later (available from Compaq).
2. Intel Alert-On-LAN Utilities, version 2.5 (available from Compaq).
3. Management console running one of the following:
   a. HP OpenView Network Node Manager 6.x
   b. Intel LANDesk Client Manager
   c. Sample Application Console from the Intel AOL Utilities (item #2 above)

5.9.3 POWER MANAGEMENT SUPPORT

The NIC features Wired-for-Management (WfM) support providing system wake up from network events (WOL) as well as generating system status messages (AOL) and supports both APM and ACPI power management environments. The controller receives 3.3 VDC (auxiliary) power as long as the system is plugged into a live AC receptacle, allowing support of wake-up events occuring over a network while the system is powered down or in a low-power state.

5.9.3.1 APM Environment

The Advanced Power Management (APM) functionality of system wake up is implemented through the system's APM-compliant BIOS and the controller's Magic Packet-compliant hardware. This environment bypasses operating system (OS) intervention allowing a plugged in unit to be turned on remotely over the network (i.e., "remote wake up"). In APM mode the controller will respond upon receiving a Magic Packet, which is a packet where the node's address is repeated 16 times. Upon Magic packet detection, the controller initiates the boot sequence.

5.9.3.2 ACPI Environment

The Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) functionality of system wake up is implemented through an ACPI-compliant OS **and is the default power management mode**. The following wakeup events may be individually enabled/disabled through the supplied software driver:

♦ Magic Packet – Packet with node address repeated 16 times in data portion

   NOTE: The following functions are supported in NDIS5 drivers but implemented through remote management software applications (such as LanDesk).

♦ Individual address match – Packet with matching user-defined byte mask
♦ Multicast address match – Packet with matching user-defined sample frame
♦ ARP (address resolution protocol) packet
♦ Flexible packet filtering – Packets that match defined CRC signature

The PROSet Application software (pre-installed and accessed through the System Tray or Windows Control Panel) allows configuration of operational parameters such as WOL and duplex mode.

5.9.4 NIC PROGRAMMING

Programming the NIC consists of configuration, which occurs during POST, and control, which occurs at runtime.

5.9.4.1 Configuration

The network interface function is a PCI device and configured though PCI configuration space registers using PCI protocol described in chapter 4. The PCI configuration registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-25.
NIC Controller PCI Configuration Registers (ICH2 Device 8/Function 0)

PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Value on Reset	PCI Conf. Addr.	Register	Value on Reset
00-01h	Vender ID	8086h	2E, 2Fh	Subsystem ID	0000h
02-03h	Device ID	2449h	34h	Capabilities Pointer	DCh
04-05h	PCI Command	0000h	3Ch	Interrupt Line	00h
06-07h	PCI Status	0290h	3Dh	Interrupt Pin	01h
08h	Revision ID	Xxh	3Eh	Min. Grant	08h
09-0Bh	Class Code	0002h	3E, 3Fh	Max. Latency	38h
0Dh	Latency Timer	00h	DCh	Capability ID	01h
0Eh	Header Type	00h	DDh	Next Item Pointer	00h
10-13h	Cntrl. Reg. Base Addr. (Mem)	8	DE, DFh	Pwr. Mgmt. Functions	FE21h
14-17h	Cntrl. Reg. Base Addr. (I/O)	1	E0, E1h	Pwr. Mgmt. Cntrl./Sts	0000h
2C, 2Dh	Subsystem Vender ID	0000h	E3h	Data	--

NOTE:
> Assume unmarked gaps are reserved and/or not used.

5.9.4.2 Control

The 82562 controller is controlled though registers that may be mapped in system memory space or variable I/O space. The registers are listed in the following table:

Table 5-26.
NIC Control Registers

Offset Addr. / Register	No. of Bytes	Offset Addr. / Register	No. of Bytes
00h SCB Status	2	19h Flow Control Register	2
02h SCB Command	2	1Bh PMDR	1
04h SCB General Pointer	4	1Ch General Control	1
08h PORT	4	1Dh General Status	1
0Ch Flash Control Reg.	2	1E-2Fh Reserved	10
0Eh EEPROM Control Reg.	2	30h Function Event Register	4
10h Mgmt. Data I/F Cntrl. Reg.	4	34h Function Event Mask Register	4
14h Rx Direct Mem. Access Byte Cnt.	4	38h Function Present State Register	4
18h Early Receive Interrupt	1	20h Force Event Register	4

☐ Not implemented in these systems (CardBus registers).

5.9.5 NIC CONNECTOR

Figure 5-15 shows the RJ-45 connector used for the NIC interface. This connector includes the two status LEDs as part of the connector assembly.

Pin	Description
1	Transmit+
2	Transmit-
3	Receive+
6	Receive-

Speed LED   Activity LED

8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
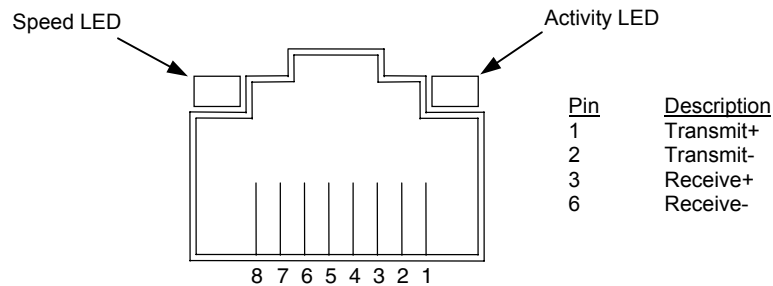
Figure 5-15. Ethernet TPE Connector (RJ-45, viewed from card edge)

5.9.6 NIC SPECIFICATIONS

Table 5-27.
NIC Specifications

Parameter	
Modes Supported	10BASE-T half duplex @ 10 MB/s 10Base-T full duplex @ 20 MB/s 100BASE-TX half duplex @ 100 MB/s 100Base-TX full duplex @ 200 MB/s
Standards Compliance	IEEE 802.2 IEEE 802.3 & 802.3u IEEE Intel priority packet (801.1p)
OS Driver Support	MS-DOS MS Windows 3.1 MS Windows 95 (pre-OSR2), 98, and 2000 Professional MS Windows NT 3.51 & 4.0 Novell Netware 3.x, 4.x, 5x Novell Netware/IntraNetWare SCO UnixWare 7 OpenServer
Boot ROM Support	Intel PRO/100 Boot Agent (PXE 3.0, RPL)
F12 BIOS Support	Yes
Bus Interface	PCI 2.2
Power Management Support	APM, ACPI, PCI Power Management Spec.

5.9.7 NIC UPGRADING/CHANGING

The integrated NIC may be used in conjunction with another NIC card in a PCI slot. These systems provide AOL support for NIC cards that are AOL-compliant to the extent described previously in section 5.9.2. These systems also provide Remote System Alert (RSA) support for such NIC cards as the 3Com 3C905C-TX NIC card. The RSA function is similar to AOL in that the unit provides, even while powered off, system status alert messages to a network console. Note that NIC cards implementing the RSA method do not use the PCI/SMBus for receiving alert information and therefore require, in addition to the PCI connection, an auxiliary cable connection with the system as shown in Figure 5-16.
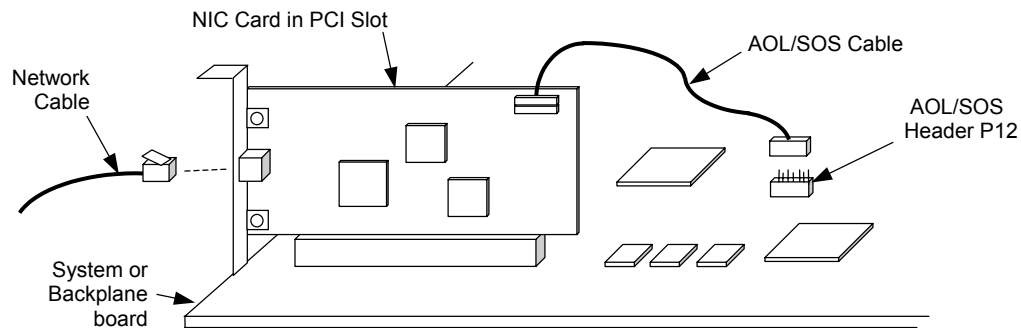
Figure 5-16.   Remote System Alert Implementation (Generic Representation)

In the Remote System Alert implementation, the NIC card receives event notification directly from the system's thermal and hood sensors and the LPC47B357 I/O controller over an AOL/SOS cable connection (Figure 5-17). During system-off conditions the NIC card receives auxiliary power from the 3.3 VDC auxiliary power rail on the PCI bus.
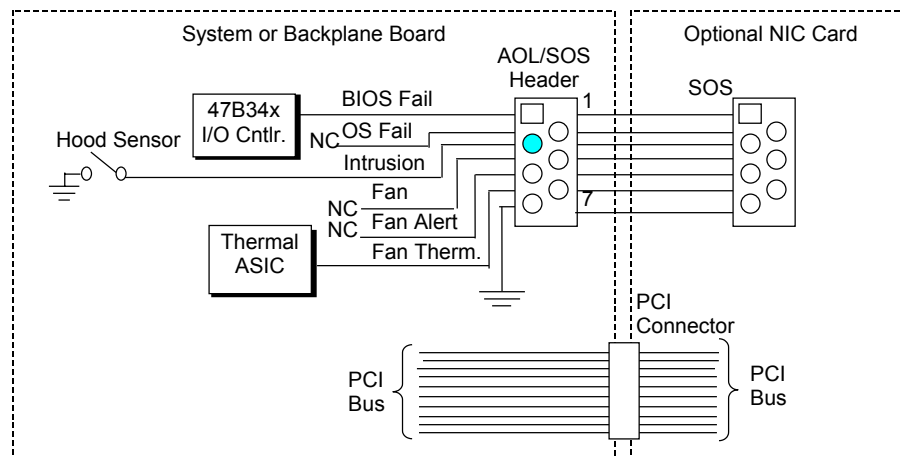
○ Not connected on Configurable Minitower models.

Figure 5-17.   RSA Logic, Block Diagram

Reportable RSA events are listed in the following table:

Table 5-28.
Remote System Alert Events

Event	Description
BIOS Failure	System fails to boot successfully.
Thermal Condition	Thermal ASIC reports high temperature. Some systems may generate an alert message when increasing fan speed.
Chassis Intrusion [1]	Smart Cover Sensor detected cover removal. This event is battery backed, meaning that should the unit be unplugged (from AC power) during cover removal, notification will occur after AC power is restored.
Heartbeat	Indication of system's network presence (sent approximately every 30 seconds in normal operation).

NOTE:

[1] Not supported on Configurable Minitower models.

The current Remote System Alert implementation requirements are as follows:

1. 3Com Etherlink 3C905C-TX NIC.
2. 7-pin AOL/SOS cable.
3. 3Com EtherDisk Driver 5.x or later (available from Compaq).
4. Client-side utility software (included with driver).
5. Server-side utility software (called 3Com Remote System Alert Manager on the compaq.com web site).
6. Management console running one of the following:
   a. HP OpenView Network Node Manager 6.x
   b. Microsoft Systems Management Server (SMS), version 1.2

Chapter 6
EMBEDDED GRAPHICS SUBSYSTEMS

6.1   INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes graphics subsystems that are embedded on the system board. Two standard graphics controller configurations are available:

♦   815E-based graphics controller implementation - The graphics controller integrated into the 82815 GMCH is implemented and used to drive a video monitor.
♦   NVIDIA graphics controller implementation (Small Form Factor only) - The graphics controller integrated into the 82815 GMCH is inhibited and an NVIDIA graphics controller on the system board is used to drive a video monitor.

Both graphics subsystems employ the AGP interface allowing the use of system memory as well as local RAM to provide efficient, economical 2D and 3D performance.

In Small Form Factor systems, the graphics controller **of either implementation** is resident (embedded) on the system board and no AGP slot is available. Upgrading or modifying the graphics controller on these systems is accomplished by adding a PCI graphics card.

In Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems an AGP slot is provided. Upgrading these systems is accomplished by simply replacing the GPA/AIMM or AGP graphics controller card in the AGP slot. **Separate AGP graphics cards are described in the Appendices of this guide.**

This chapter covers the following subjects:

6.2   INTEL 815E-BASED GRAPHICS SUBSYSTEM

The Intel 815E chipset integrates a graphics controller into its 82815 GMCH component (Figure 6-1).
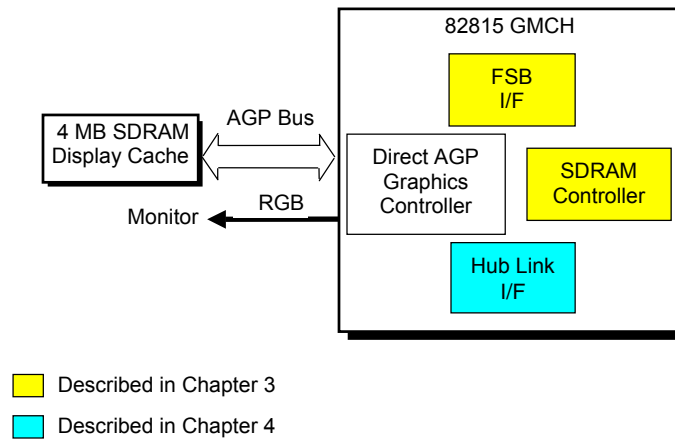
Figure 6-1.   815E-Based Graphics, Block diagram

6.2.1 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The graphics controller (Figure 6-2) integrated into the 82815 GMCH component includes 2D and 3D accelerator engines working with a deeply-pipelined pre-processor. The controller supports perspective-correct texture mapping, bilinear and anisotropic Mip-mapping, Alpha blending, Gouraud shading, and fogging.

The controller uses a "Direct AGP" interface that allows the Intel graphics controller to use a portion of system memory for instructions, textures, and frame (display) buffering. Using a process called Dynamic Video Memory Technology (DVMT), the controller dynamically allocates display and texture memory amounts according to the needs of the application.

The controller also uses four megabytes of SDRAM (soldered down in small form factor models, separate GPA/AIMM card in the slim desktop and configurable minitower models) as a display cache especially suited for 3D operation. The additional Display Cache allows the graphics controller to simultaneously render graphics to the Z-buffer (in the display cache) while processing textures in a portion of system memory.
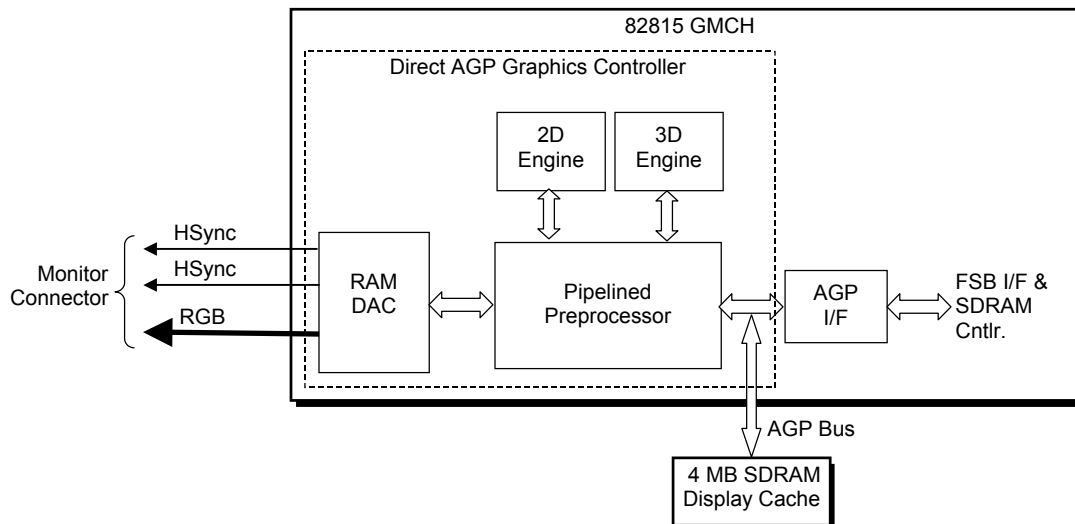
Figure 6-2. 82815 GMCH Integrated Graphics Subsystem

The integrated graphics controller includes special enhancements for 2D operations. Motion compensation logic is included to improve performance during software decoding of MPEG2 video. Hardware cursor and overlay engines relieve software processing and provide independent gamma correction, saturation, and brightness control.

The 230-MHz RAMDAC can support a variable-scan rate monitor up to a maximum resolution of 1600 x 1200 with 256 colors. Video BIOS for the controller is held in the system BIOS ROM and copied into systems memory at runtime for maximum performance.

6.2.1.1 Feature Summary

♦ Accelerated driver support for Windows 3.1/95/98/2000, Windows NT 4.0, OS/2
♦ MS ActiveMovie and Media Player support for Win95
♦ Direct 3D support
♦ MS Direct Draw 5/6 support
♦ AGP 2X interface
♦ DDC2B compliant
♦ Accelerator engine support for:
  • 3-ROP BitBLT
  • Line Draw
  • Color expansion
  • Video color conversion/scaling
  • Motion video
  • Triangle setup

6.2.2 DISPLAY MODES

The Intel graphics controller supports the following 2D display modes:

Table 6-1.
815E-Based Graphics Display Modes

Resolution	Bits per pixel	Color Depth	Refresh Rate
640 x 480	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
640 x 480	16	65K	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
640 x 480	24	16.7M	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
720 x 480	8	256	75, 85
720 x 480	16	65K	75, 85
720 x 480	24	16.7M	75, 85
720 x 576	8	256	60, 75, 85
720 x 576	16	65K	60, 75, 85
720 x 576	24	16.7M	60, 75, 85
800 x 600	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
800 x 600	16	65K	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
800 x 600	24	16.7M	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1024 x 768	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1024 x 768	16	65K	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1024 x 768	24	16.7M	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1152 x 864	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1152 x 864	16	65K	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1152 x 864	24	16.7M	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1280 x 720	8	256	60, 75, 85
1280 x 720	16	65K	60, 75, 85
1280 x 720	24	16.7M	60, 75, 85
1280 x 960	8	256	60, 75, 85
1280 x 960	16	65K	60, 75, 85
1280 x 960	24	16.7M	60, 75, 85
1280 x 1024	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1280 x 1024	16	65K	60, 70, 72, 75, 85
1280 x 1024	24	16.7M	60, 70, 75, 85
1600 x 900	8	256	60, 75, 85
1600 x 900	16	65K	60, 75, 85
1600 x 1200	8	256	60, 70, 72, 75, 85

6.2.3 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

The 815E-based graphics controller uses a specific amount of system memory allocated as follows:

Video BIOS – 512 or 1024 kilobytes. An OS report of available system memory will be the total amount installed LESS this amount.

Graphics Memory – Prior to the PV 4.x driver being loaded, the graphics memory will be one megabyte for supporting standard VGA modes. After driver load, memory allocation will be set by the Dynamic Video Memory Technology (DVMT) for rendering, Z-buffering, and displaying according to need and total system memory availablility. Assuming the presence of 4 megabytes of display cache (standard on these systems) the following amounts will be allocated:

♦ w/Windows 98 and 32 megabytes of system memory – 9 megabytes
♦ w/Windows 98, NT 4.0, or 2000 and 64/128 megabytes of system memory – 12 megabytes

6.2.4 815E-BASED GRAPHICS PROGRAMMING

The 815E-based graphics controller is configured using PCI configuration registers listed in Table 6-2.

Table 6-2.
815E-Based Graphics Controller PCI Configuration Registers (GMCH, Function 2)

PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value	PCI Config. Addr.	Register	Reset Value
00, 01h	Vendor ID	8086h	2E, 2Fh	Subsystem ID	0000h
02, 03h	Device ID	1132h	30-33h	Vid. BIOS Base Addr.	0's
04, 05h	Command	0004h	34h	Capabilities Pointer	DCh
06, 07h	Status	02B0h	3Ch	Interrupt Line	00h
08h	Revision ID	02h	3Dh	Interrupt Pin	01h
0A, 0Bh	Class Code	0003h	3Eh	Min. Grant	00h
0Eh	Header Type	01h	3Fh	Max. Latency	00h
0Fh	BIST	00h	DC, DDh	Pwr. Mgmt. Capabilities	0001h
10-13h	Memory Range Addr.	8	DE, DFh	Pwr. Mgmt. Capabilites	0022h
14-17h	Mem. Mapped Range Addr.	0's	E0, E1h	Pwr. Mgmt. Control	0000h
2C, 2Dh	Subsys. Vendor ID	0000h	E2-FFh	Reserved	--

NOTE:
> Assume unmarked locations/gaps as reserved. Refer to Intel documentation for detailed register descriptions.

The graphics controller is controlled through memory-mapped registers by the appropriate software driver.

6.2.5 UPGRADING 815E-BASED GRAPHICS

The method of upgrading the 815E-based graphics controller is dependent on the system type.

Small Form Factor: No AGP slot is provided for upgrading the AGP graphics. Since PCI graphics adapters are generally considered inferior to AGP types, a true "upgrade" is not possible on these systems. However, dual-monitor support is possible by adding a PCI-type graphics card.

Compaq Deskpro EN Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower: Upgrading the AGP graphics is facilitated by replacing the existing GPA card with an AGP graphics adapter card. During POST, the BIOS will detect the presence of the AGP graphics adapter on the AGP bus and disable the 815E-based graphics controller. Dual monitor support is possible by adding a PCI graphics card.

6.3   NVIDIA GRAPHICS SUBSYSTEM

The NVIDIA TNT2 Pro AGP graphics controller is available in select Deskpro EN series configurations as the premium graphics solution. This solution is resident on the system board in Compaq Deskpro EN Small Form Factor systems and as a separate AGP card in Compaq Deskpro EN Slim Desktop and Configurable Minitower systems. **This subsection describes only the on-board NVIDIA graphics subsystem used on Small Form Factor systems. The NVIDIA graphics card used in Deskpro EN Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower systems is described in Appendix d**.
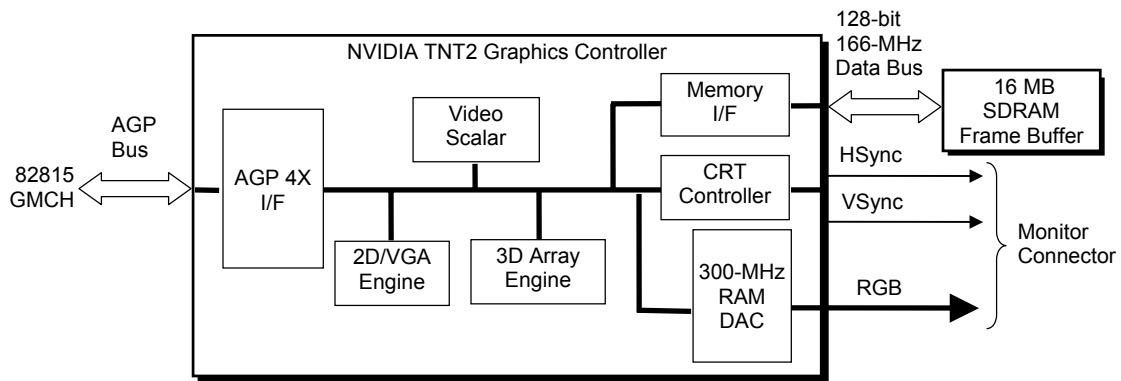
Figure 6-3. NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics Subsystem

The NVIDIA TNT2 Pro supports AGP 4X protocol, providing a peak transfer rate of 1GB/s. The controller achieves high 3D performance with special rendering techniques such as single-cycle multi-texturing and parallel triangle processing. The controller utilizes a portion of system memory for texturing, instructions, and control while employing 16 megabytes of SDRAM for the frame (display) buffer. Video BIOS is included in the system BIOS ROM and copied into system memory at runtime.

Key features of the NVIDIA-based subsystem include:

♦   300-MHz DAC
♦   QuickDraw, DirectX 6, PC98/99, Broadcast PC, DirectShow, OpenGL compatible
♦   2D accelerator with:
  •   Programmable, transparent BitBLT
  •   Full acceleration MS DirectDraw support
  •   High speed 32-bit VGA core
♦   3D accelerator with:
  •   Ultra-pipelined floating point engine
  •   Hardware dithering including LUT textures
♦   Video support features including:
  •   Color conversion and scaling
  •   30-FPS DVD performance
♦   Universal driver compatibility allows easy upgrading to other NVIDIA controllers

6.3.1 DISPLAY MODES

The graphics modes supported by the NVIDIA controller are listed in Tables 6-3.

Table 6-3.
NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics Display Modes

Resolution	Bits per pixel	Color Depth	Max. Refresh Frequency (Hz)
640 x 480	8	256	85
640 x 480	16	65K	85
640 x 480	24	16.7M	85
800 x 600	8	256	85
800 x 600	16	65K	85
800 x 600	24	16.7M	85
1024 x 768	8	256	85
1024 x 768	16	65K	85
1024 x 768	24	16.7M	85
1152 x 864	8	256	85
1152 x 864	16	65K	85
1152 x 864	24	16.7M	85
1280 x 1024	8	256	85
1280 x 1024	16	65K	85
1280 x 1024	24	16.7M	85
1600 x 1200	8	256	85
1600 x 1200	16	65K	85
1600 x 1200	24	16.7M	85
1800 x 1440	8	256	85
1800 x 1440	16	65K	85
1800 x 1440	24	16.7M	85
1920 x 1080	8	256	85
1920 x 1080	16	65K	85
1920 x 1080	24	16.7M	85
1920 x 1200	8	256	75

6.3.2 NVIDIA GRAPHICS PROGRAMMING

The NVIDIA graphics controller is configured through PCI configuration registers and controlled through memory-mapped registers by an appropriate software driver.

6.3.3 NVIDIA GRAPHICS UPGRADING

The method of upgrading the NVIDIA graphics controller is determined by the system type.

Compaq Deskpro EN Small Form Factor: No AGP slot is provided for upgrading the NVIDIA graphics on Deskpro EN SFF models, which have the NVIDIA graphics controller embedded on the system board. Since PCI graphics adapters are generally considered inferior to AGP types, a true "upgrade" is not possible on these systems. However, dual-monitor support is possible by adding a PCI-type graphics card.

Compaq Deskpro EN Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower: Upgrading the AGP graphics is facilitated by replacing the existing nVIDIA graphics card with another AGP graphics adapter card. During POST, the BIOS will detect the presence of the AGP graphics adapter in the AGP slot and inhibit the integrated controller of the 82815 GMCH. Dual monitor support is possible by adding a PCI graphics card.

6.4   MONITOR POWER MANAGEMENT CONTROL

The embedded graphics controllers provide monitor power control for monitors that conform to the VESA display power management signaling (DPMS) protocol. This protocol defines different power consumption conditions and uses the HSYNC and VSYNC signals to select a monitor's power condition. Table 6-4 lists the monitor power conditions.

Table 6-4.
Monitor Power Management Conditions

HSYNC	VSYNC	Power Mode	Description
Active	Active	On	Monitor is completely powered up. If activated, the inactivity counter counts down during system inactivity and if allowed to tiemout, generates an SMI to initiate the Suspend mode.
Active	Inactive	Suspend	Monitor's high voltage section is turned off and CRT heater (filament) voltage is reduced from 6.6 to 4.4 VDC. The Off mode inactivity timer counts down from the preset value and if allowed to timeout, another SMI is generated and serviced, resulting in the monitor being placed into the Off mode. Wake up from Suspend mode is typically a few seconds.
Inactive	Inactive	Off	Monitor's high voltage section and heater circuitry is turned off. Wake up from Off mode is a little longer than from Suspend.

6.5   MONITOR CONNECTOR

A DB-15 connector is provided on the rear chassis for connection to an analog monitor. The pinout for this connector is shown in Figure 6-3 and Table 6-5.
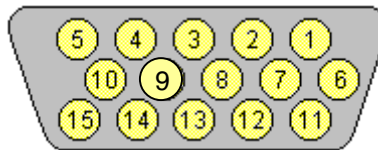
Figure 6-3. VGA Monitor Connector, (Female DB-15, as viewed from rear).

Table 6-5.
DB-15 Monitor Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	R	Red Analog	9	PWR	+5 VDC (fused) [1]
2	G	Blue Analog	10	GND	Ground
3	B	Green Analog	11	NC	Not Connected
4	NC	Not Connected	12	SDA	DDC2-B Data
5	GND	Ground	13	HSync	Horizontal Sync
6	R GND	Red Analog Ground	14	VSync	Vertical Sync
7	G GND	Blue Analog Ground	15	SCL	DDC2-B Clock
8	B GND	Green Analog Ground	--	--	--

NOTES:
    [1] Fuse automatically resets when excessive load is removed.

Chapter 7
POWER and SIGNAL DISTRIBUTION

7.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the power supply and method of general power and signal distribution. Topics covered in this chapter include:

♦ Power supply assembly/control (7.2)   page 7-1
♦ Power distribution (7.3)   page 7-5
♦ Signal distribution (7.4)   page 7-8

7.1 POWER SUPPLY ASSEMBLY/CONTROL

This system features a power supply assembly that is controlled through programmable logic (Figure 7-1).
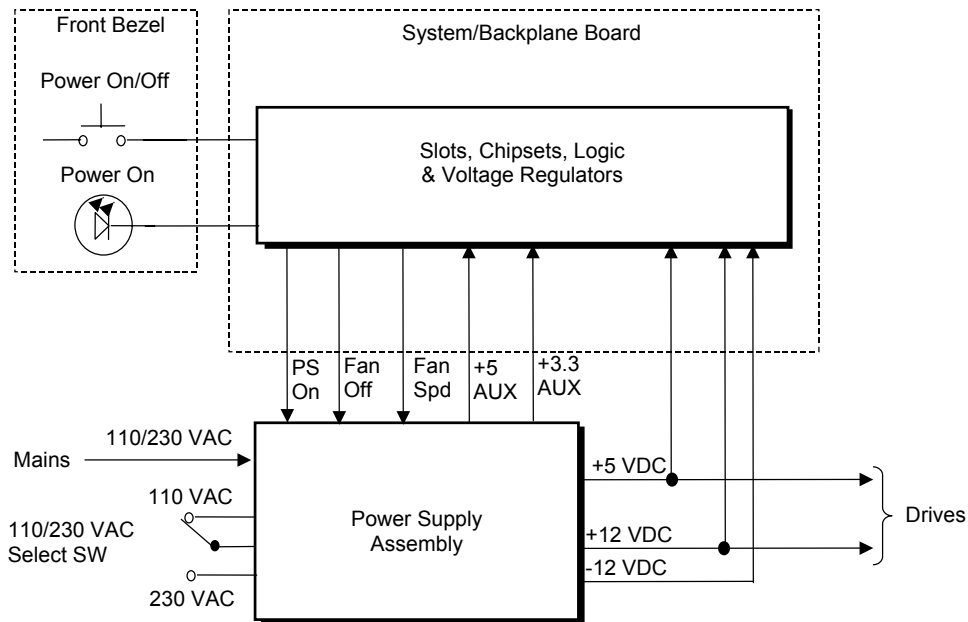
Figure 7–1. Power Distribution and Control, Block Diagram

7.1.1 POWER SUPPLY ASSEMBLY

The power supply assembly is contained in a single unit that features a selectable input voltage: 90-132 VAC and 180-264 VAC. Small Form Factor systems use a 120-watt supply while all other systems employ a 200-watt supply. Tables 7-1 and 7-2 list the specifications of the power supplies.

Table 7-1.
120-Watt Power Supply Assembly Specifications (P/N 165997)

	Range/ Tolerance	Min. Current Loading [1]	Max. Current	Surge Current [2]	Max. Ripple
Input Line Voltage:					
110 VAC Setting	90 - 132 VAC	--	--	--	--
220 VAC Setting	180-264 VAC	--	--	--	--
Line Frequency	47 - 63 Hz	--	--	--	--
Steady State Input (VAC) Current	--	--	4.0 A	--	--
+3.3 VDC Output	+/- 5%	0.60 A	11.0 A	11.0 A	50 mV
+5 VDC Output	+/- 5 %	0.50 A	11.0 A	11.0 A	65 mV
+3 AUX Output	+/- 5 %	0.20 A	1.00 A	1.00 A	50 mV
+5 AUX Output	+/- 4 %	0.20 A	2.40 A	2.40 A	65 mV
+12 VDC Output	+/- 5 %	0.00 A	3.00 A	3.50 A	120 mV
-12 VDC Output	+/- 10 %	0.00 A	0.15 A	0.15 A	200 mV

NOTES:
[1] Minimum loading requirements must be met at all times to ensure normal operation and specification compliance.
[2] Surge duration no longer than 10 seconds and +12 tolerance +/- 10%.

Table 7-2.
200-Watt Power Supply Assembly Specifications (P/N 161071 or 386461)

	Range/ Tolerance	Min. Current Loading [1]	Max. Current	Surge Current [2]	Max. Ripple
Input Line Voltage:					
110 VAC Setting	90 - 132 VAC	--	--	--	--
220 VAC Setting	180-264 VAC	--	--	--	--
Line Frequency	47 - 63 Hz	--	--	--	--
Steady State Input (VAC) Current	--	--	6.00 A	--	--
+3.3 VDC Output	+/- 4%	1.40 A	18.0 A [3]	18.0 A	50 mV
+3.3 AUX	+/-5 %	0.00	2.00 A	2.00 A	50 mV
+5 VDC Output	+/- 5 %	1.40 A	20.0 A [3]	20.0 A	50 mV
-5 VDC Output	+/- 10 %	0.00 A	0.15 A	0.15 A	100 mV
+5 AUX Output	+/- 4 %	0.00 A	1.70 A	1.70 A	50 mV
+12 VDC Output	+/- 5 %	0.07 A	6.50 A	8.50 A	120 mV
-12 VDC Output	+/- 10 %	0.00 A	0.15 A	0.15 A	200 mV

NOTES:
[1] Minimum loading requirements must be met at all times to ensure normal operation and specification compliance.
[2] Surge duration no longer than 10 seconds and +12 tolerance +/- 10%.
[3] Maximum combined power provided by +3.3 and +5 VDC outputs should not exceed 135 watts.

7.1.2 POWER CONTROL

The power supply assembly is controlled digitally by the PS On signal (Figure 7-1). When PS On is asserted, the Power Supply Assembly is activated and all voltage outputs are produced. When PS On is de-asserted, the Power Supply Assembly is off and all voltages (except +3.3 AUX and +5 AUX) are not generated. **Note that the +3.3 AUX and +5 AUX voltages are always produced as long as the system is connected to a live AC source.**

7.1.2.1 Power Button

The PS On signal is typically controlled through the Power Button which, when pressed and released, applies a negative (grounding) pulse to the power control logic. The resultant action of pressing the power button depends on the state and mode of the system at that time and is described as follows:

System State	Pressed Power Button Results In:
Off	Negative pulse, of which the falling edge results in power control logic asserting PS On signal to Power Supply Assembly, which then initializes. ACPI four-second counter is not active.
On, ACPI Disabled	Negative pulse, of which the falling edge causes power control logic to de-assert the PS On signal. ACPI four-second counter is not active.

On, ACPI Enabled	Pressed and Released Under Four Seconds:
	      Negative pulse, of which the falling edge causes power control logic to generate SMI-, set a bit in the SMI source register, set a bit for button status, and start four-second counter. Software should clear the button status bit within four seconds and the Suspend state is entered. If the status bit is not cleared by software in four seconds PS On is de-asserted and the power supply assembly shuts down (this operation is meant as a guard if the OS is hung).
	
	Pressed and Held At least Four Seconds Before Release:
	      If the button is held in for at least four seconds and then released, PS On is negated, de-activating the power supply.

7.1.2.2 Power LED Indications

A dual-color LED is used to indicate system power status. The front panel (bezel) power LED provides a visual indication of key system conditions listed as follows:

Power LED	Condition
Steady green	Normal full-on operation (S0)
Blinking green @ 1 Hz	Suspend mode (S1)
Blinking green @ 2 Hz	Sleep (suspend to RAM) state (S3)
Blinking green @ .5 Hz	Sleep (suspend to Disk) state (S4)
Steady red	Processor not seated
Blinks red @ 2 Hz	Power supply crowbar activated
Blinks red @ 1 Hz	BIOS ROM error
Blinks red @ 4 Hz	Thermal condition: processor has overheated and shut down (later systems using PCA#s 011305, 011308, or 011311 power done for this condition).

7.1.2.3 Wake Up Events

The PS On signal can be activated with a power "wake-up" of the system due to the occurrence of a magic packet, serial port ring, or PCI power management (PME) event. These events can be individually enabled through the Setup utility to wake up the system from a sleep (low power) state.

$\triangle$ **NOTE:** Wake-up functionality requires that certain circuits receive auxiliary power while the system is turned off. The system unit must be plugged into a live AC outlet for wake up events to function. **Using an AC power strip to control system unit power will disable wake-up event functionality.**

The wake up sequence for each event occurs as follows:

Wake-On-LAN

The network interface controller (NIC) can be configured for detection of a "Magic Packet" and wake the system up from sleep mode through the assertion of the PME- signal on the PCI bus. Refer to Chapter 5, "Network Support" for more information.

Modem Ring

A ring condition on serial port A (COM1) or serial port B (COM2) can be detected by the power control logic and, if so configured, cause the PS On signal to be asserted.

Power Management Event

A power management event that asserts the PME- signal on the PCI bus can be enabled to cause the power control logic to generate the PS On. Note that the PCI card must be PCI ver. 2.2 compliant to support this function.

7.2   POWER DISTRIBUTION

7.2.1   3.3/5/12 VDC DISTRIBUTION

The power supply assembly includes a multi-connector cable assembly that routes +3.3 VDC, +5 VDC, -5 VDC, +12 VC, and -12 VDC to the system board as well as to the individual drive assemblies. Figure 7-2 shows the power supply cabling for the Deskpro EN SFF series.
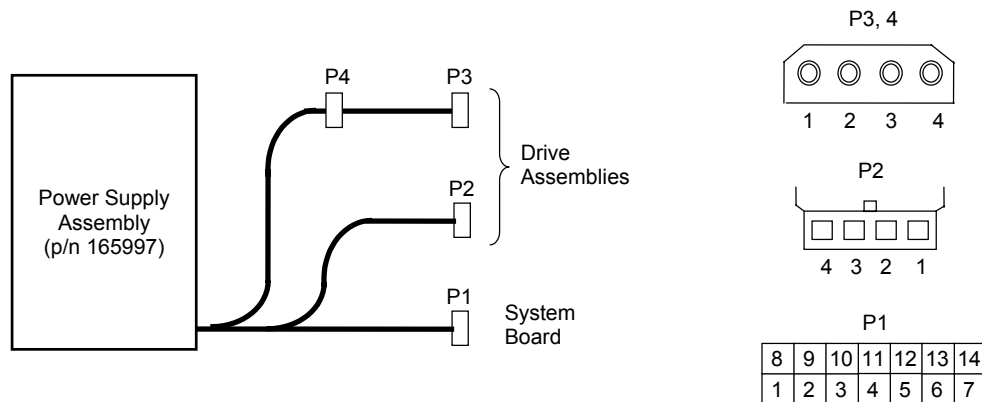
Conn. #	Pin 1	Pin 2	Pin 3	Pin 4	Pin 5	Pin 6	Pin 7
P1	+3.3	+3.3 AUX	RTN	+5	RTN	+5	RTN
P1 [1]	+3.3	-12	FO	PS On	+5 AUX	FS	+12 VDC
P2	+5	GND	GND	+12			
P3	+12	GND	GND	+5			

NOTES:

[1] This row represents pins 8-14 of connector P1.

All + and - values are VDC.
RTN = Return (signal ground)
GND = Power ground
RS = Remote sense
FO = Fan off
FS = Fan speed

Figure 7–2.   Small Form Factor Power Cable Diagram

Figure 7-3 shows the power supply cabling for Deskpro EN SDT/CMT series units.

Figure 7–3.   Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower Power Cable Diagram
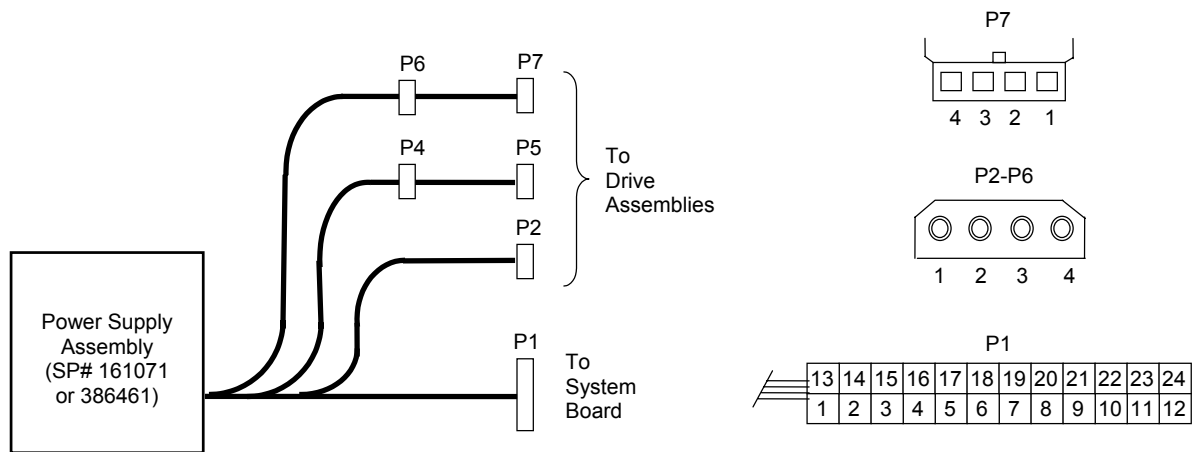
Conn. #	Pin 1	Pin 2	Pin 3	Pin 4	Pin 5	Pin 6	Pin 7	Pin 8	Pin 9	Pin 10	Pin 11	Pin 12
P1	+3.3	+3.3RS	RTN	+5	RTN	+5	AuxRtn	FO	+5 Aux	+12	+3.3Aux	FSpd
P1 [1]	+3.3	-12	Rtn	PS On	RTN	RSRTN	RTN	-5	+5	+5	+3.3RS	FS
P2	+5	GND	GND	+12								
P3	+12	GND	GND	+5								

NOTES:

[1] This row represents pins 13-24 of connector P1.

All + and - values are VDC.
RTN = Return (signal ground)
GND = Power ground
RS = Remote sense
FO = Fan off
FSpd = Fan speed
FS = Fan Sink

7.2.2 LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION

Voltages less than 3.3 VDCincluding processor core (VccP) voltage are produced through regulator circuitry on the system board.

NOTE:
  [1] VDDQ = 1.5 for AGP 4X cards (Type Det- grounded), 3.3 for AGP 1X/2X cards (Type Det- left open).
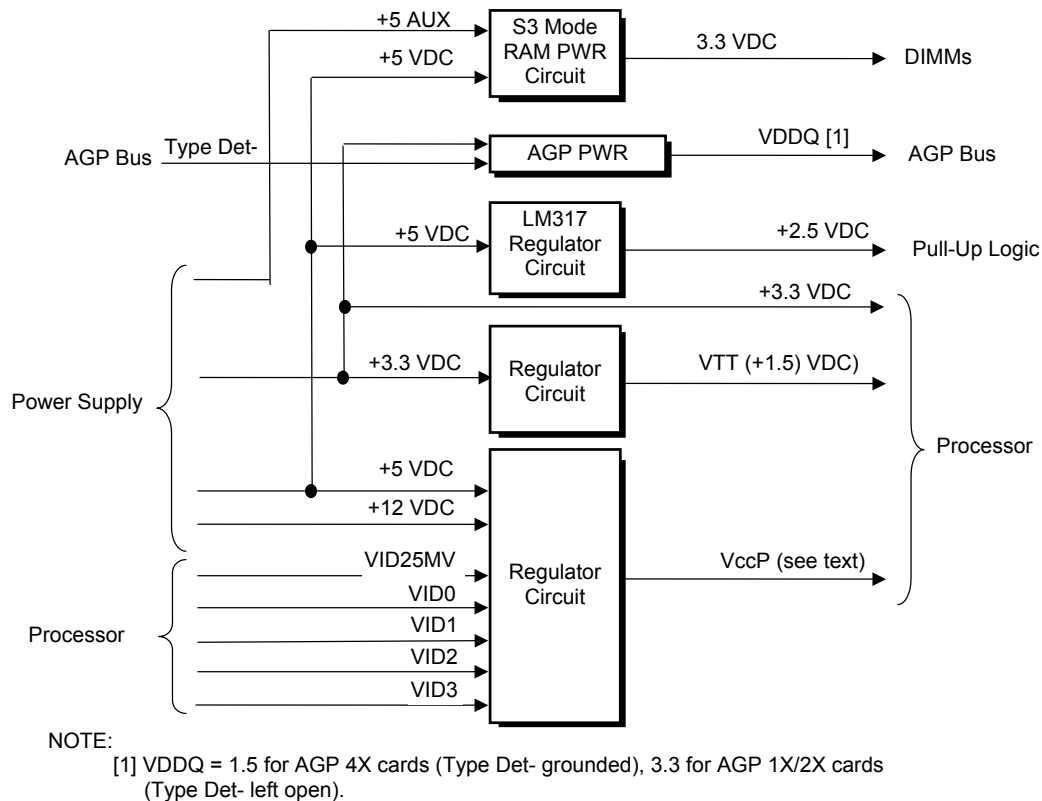
Figure 7–4. Low Voltage Supply and Distribution Diagram

The VccP regulator produces the VccP (processor core) voltage according to the strapping of signals VID3..0 by the processor. The possible voltages available are listed as follows:

VID 3..0	VccP	VID 3..0	VccP
0000	2.05 VDC	1000	1.65 VDC
0001	2.00 VDC	1001	1.60 VDC
0010	1.95 VDC	1010	1.55 VDC
0011	1.90 VDC	1011	1.50 VDC
0100	1.85 VDC	1100	1.45 VDC
0101	1.80 VDC	1101	1.40 VDC
0110	1.75 VDC	1110	1.35 VDC
0111	1.70 VDC	1111	1.30 VDC

Refer to Chapter 3 for a listing of the core voltages set by the Celeron (Table 3-1) and Pentium III (Table 3-2) processors.

7.3   SIGNAL DISTRIBUTION

Figures 7-4 and 7-5 show general signal distribution between the main subassemblies of the system units.

Figure 7–5.   Small Form Factor Signal Distribution Diagram
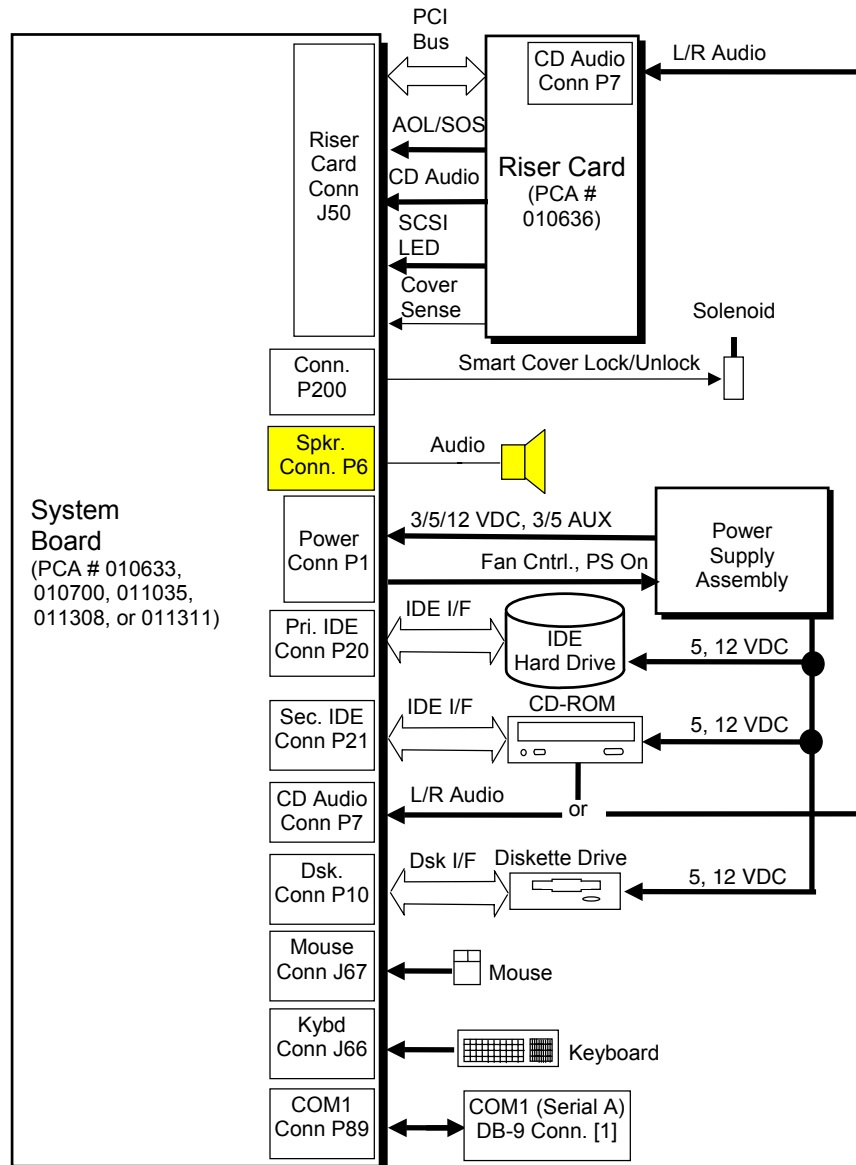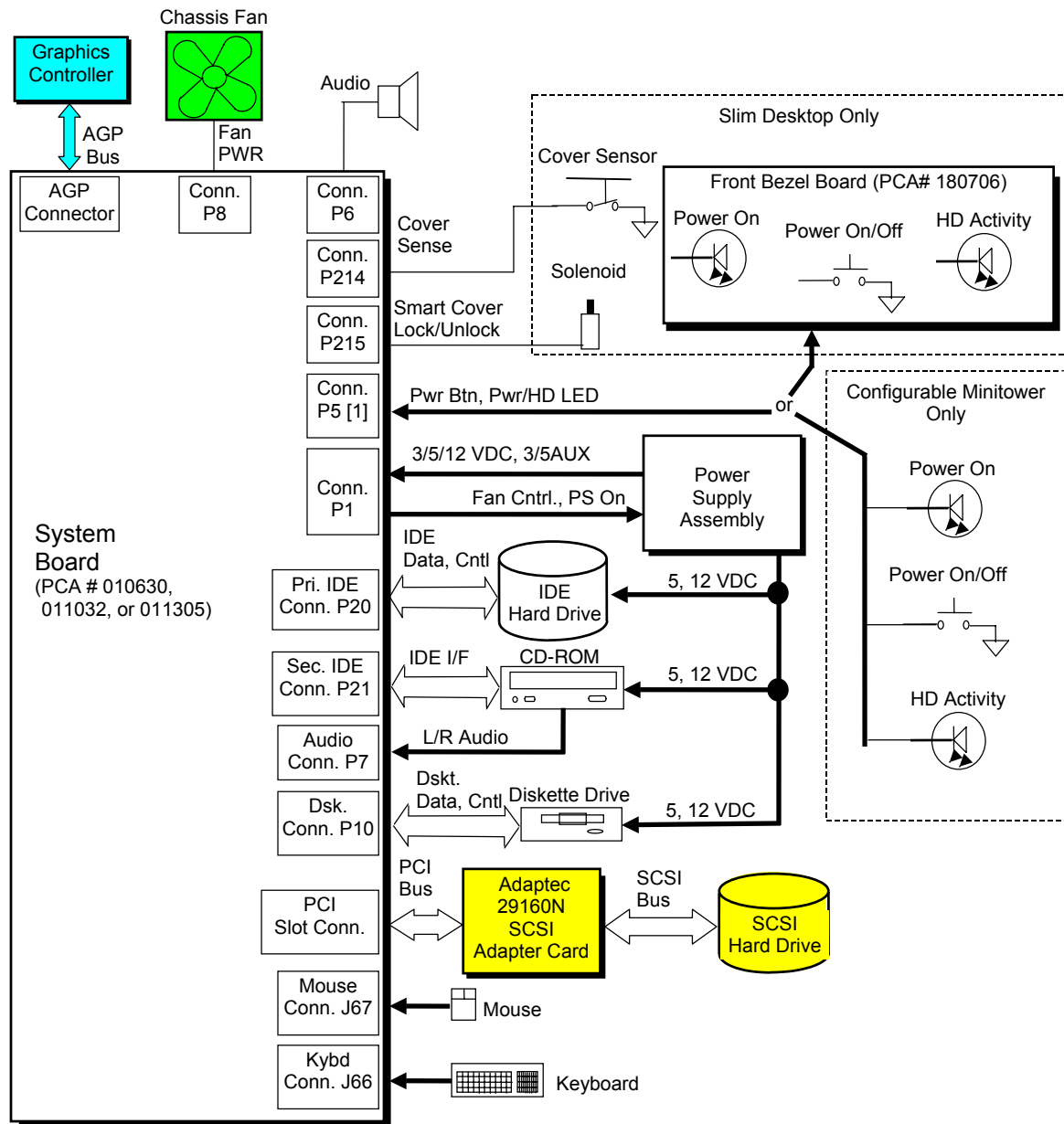
NOTES:

[1] Connector mounted on rear chassis panel.

PCA #010633 and 010700 only. PCA #011035 has speaker mounted on system board.

Figure 7–6. Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower Models Signal Distribution Diagram

Power Button/LED Header P5
(Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower only)

```
1  HD LED anode

3  HD LED cathode
4  PWR LED anode
5  PWR LED cathode
6  PWR button (gnd)
7  PWR button (+)
8  SCSI HD LED [1]
9  SCSI HD LED [1]
```

CD Audio Header P7

```
1  Ground
2  Audio (left channel)
3  Ground
4  Audio (right channel)
```

AOL/SOS Header P12

```
BIOS Fail  1        2  OS Fail
Intrusion  3        4  Thermal
Fan Alert  5        6  Pwr
Ground  7
```
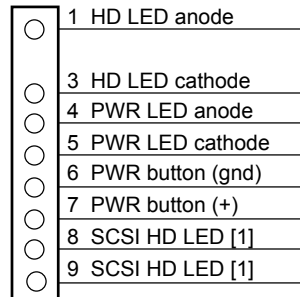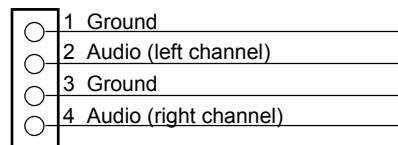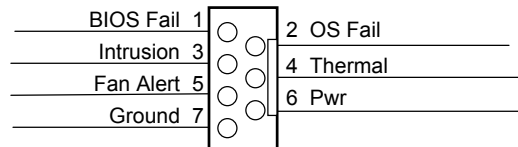
Serial Port A/COM1 Header P16
(Small Form Factor only)

```
Carrier Detect          6  Data Set Ready
RX Data  2              7  Request to Send
TX Data  3              8  Clear to Send
Data Terminal Ready  4  9  Ring Indicate
Ground  5
```
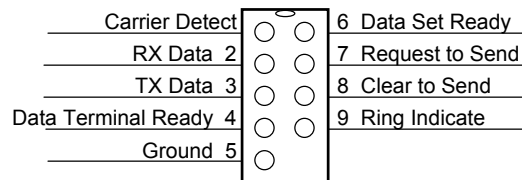
NOTE:

No polarity consideration required for connection to speaker header P6 or SCSI HD LED header P29.
[1] Separate cable connection for these two pins (equivalent of header P29 on other systems).

Figure 7–7. Header Pinouts

Chapter 8
BIOS ROM

8.1   INTRODUCTION

The Basic Input/Output System (BIOS) of the computer is a collection of machine language programs stored as firmware in read-only memory (ROM). The BIOS ROM includes such functions as Power-On Self Test (POST), PCI device initialization, Plug 'n Play support, power management activities, and the Setup utility. The firmware contained in the BIOS ROM supports the following operating systems and specifications:

♦ DOS 6.2
♦ Windows 3.1 (and Windows for Workgroups 3.11)
♦ Windows 95, 98, and 2000
♦ Windows NT 3.5 and 4.0
♦ OS/2 ver 2.1 and OS/2 Warp
♦ SCO Unix
♦ DMI 2.1
♦ Intel Wired for Management (WfM) ver. 2.2
♦ Alert-On-LAN (AOL) and Wake-On-LAN (WOL)
♦ ACPI and OnNow
♦ APM 1.2
♦ SMBIOS 2.3.1
♦ PC98/99 and NetPC
♦ Boot Integrity Services (BIS)
♦ Video BIOS on systems with 815E-based graphics or integrated nVIDIA AGP graphics
♦ Intel PXE boot ROM for the integrated LAN controller
♦ BIOS Boot Specification 1.01
♦ Enhanced Disk Drive Specification 3.0
♦ "El Torito" Bootable CD-ROM Format Specification 1.0
♦ ATAPI Removeable Media Device BIOS Specification 1.0

The BIOS ROM is a 512KB Intel Firmware Hub (or Firmware Hub-compatible) part. The runtime portion of the BIOS resides in a 128KB block from E0000h to FFFFFh.
This chapter includes the following topics:

8.2 ROM FLASHING

The system BIOS firmware is contained in a flash ROM device that can be re-written with BIOS code (using the ROMPAQ utility or a remote flash program) allowing easy upgrading, including changing the splash screen displayed during the POST routine.

8.2.1 UPGRADING

Upgrading the BIOS is not normally required but may be necessary if changes are made to the unit's operating system, hard drive, or processor. All BIOS ROM upgrades are available directly from Compaq. Flashing is done either locally with a ROMPaq diskette or remotely using the network boot function (described in the section 8.3.2).

This system includes 64 KB of write-protected boot block ROM that provides a way to recover from a failed remote flashing of the system BIOS ROM. If the BIOS ROM fails the flash check, the boot block code provides the minimum amount of support necessary to allow booting the system from the diskette drive and re-flashing the system ROM with a ROMPAQ diskette. Note that if an administrator password has been set in the system the boot block will prompt for this password by illuminating the caps lock keyboard LED and displaying a message if video support is available. A PS/2 keyboard must be used during bootblock operation.

Since video may not be available during the initial boot sequence the boot block routine uses the Num Lock, Caps Lock, and Scroll Lock LEDs of the PS/2 keyboard to communicate the status of the ROM flash as follows:

Table 8-1.
Boot Block Codes

Num Lock LED	Cap Lock LED	Scroll Lock LED	Meaning
Off	On	Off	Administrator password required.
On	Off	Off	Boot failed. Reset required for retry.
Off	Off	On	Flash failed.
On	On	On	Flash complete.

8.2.2 CHANGEABLE SPLASH SCREEN

The splash screen (image displayed during POST) is stored in the BIOS ROM and may be replaced with another image of choice by using the Image Flash utility (Flashi.exe). The Image Flash utility allows the user to browse directories for image searching and pre-viewing. Background and foreground colors can be chosen from the selected image's palette.

The splash screen image requirements are as follows:

♦   Format: Windows bitmap with 4-bit RLE encoding
♦   Size: 424 (width) x 320 (height) pixels
♦   Colors: 16 (4 bits per pixel)
♦   File Size: $\leq$ 64 KB

The Image Flash utility can be invoked at a command line for quickly flashing a known image as follows:

>\Flashi.exe [Image_Filename] [Background_Color] [Foreground_Color]

The utility checks to insure that the specified image meets the splash screen requirements listed above or it will not be loaded into the ROM.

8.3   BOOT FUNCTIONS

The BIOS supports various functions related to the boot process, including those that occur during the Power On Self-Test (POST) routine.

8.3.1 BOOT DEVICE ORDER

The default boot device order is as follows:

1. CD-ROM drive (EL Torito CD images)
2. Diskette drive (A)
3. Hard drive (C)
4. Network boot

The order can be changed in the ROM-based Setup utility (accessed by pressing F10 when so prompted during POST).

8.3.2 NETWORK BOOT (F12) SUPPORT

The BIOS supports booting the system to a network server. The function is accessed by pressing the F12 key when prompted at the lower right hand corner of the display during POST. Booting to a network server allows for such functions as:

♦ Flashing a ROM on a system without a functional operating system (OS).
♦ Installing an OS.
♦ Installing an application.

These systems include, as standard, an integrated Intel 82562-equivalent NIC with Preboot Execution Environment (PXE) ROM and can boot with a NetPC-compliant server.

8.3.3 MEMORY DETECTION AND CONFIGURATION

This system uses the Serial Presence Detect (SPD) method of determining the installed DIMM configuration. The BIOS communicates with an EEPROM on each DIMM through the SMBus to obtain data on the following DIMM parameters:

♦ Presence
♦ Size
♦ Type
♦ Timing/CAS latency
♦ PC133 capability

> **NOTE:** Refer to Chapter 3, "Processor/Memory Subsystem" for the SPD format and DIMM data specific to this system.

The BIOS performs memory detection and configuration with the following steps:

1. Program the buffer strength control registers based on SPD data and the DIMM slots that are populated.
2. Determine the common CAS latency that can be supported by the DIMMs.
3. Determine the memory size for each DIMM and program the GMCH accordingly.
4. Enable refresh
5. Determine if the memory configuration will allow for 133MHz memory operation and program the memory clock and GMCH (see note below)

> **NOTE:** The presence of PC133-compliant DIMMS will be indicated by BIOS reading 75h from byte 9 and 64h or 85h from byte 126. For PC133 operation to occur the FSB of the processor must be running at 133 MHz and all installed DIMMs must be PC133-compliant and total no more than four "sides." Refer to Chapter 3 for more details on PC133 operation.

8.3.4 BOOT ERROR CODES

The BIOS provides visual and audible indications of a failed system boot by using the keyboard LEDs and the system speaker. The error conditions are as follows:

Table 8-2. Boot Error Codes

Visual [1]	Audible	Meaning
Num Lock LED blinks	1 short, 2 long beeps	System memory not present or incompatible.
Scroll Lock LED blinks	2 long, 1 short beeps	Hardware failure before graphics initialization.
Caps Lock LED blinks	1 long, 2 short beeps	Graphics controller not present or failed to initialize.
Num, Caps, Scroll Lock LEDs blink	1 long, 3 short beeps	ROM failure.
Num, Caps, Scroll Lock LEDs blink in sequence	none	Network service mode

NOTE:
    [1] Provided with PS/2 keyboard only.

8.4   SETUP UTILITY

The Setup utility (stored in ROM) allows the user to configure system functions involving security, power management, and system resources. The Setup utility is ROM-based and invoked when the F10 key is pressed during the time the F10 prompt is displayed in the lower right-hand corner of the screen during the POST routine. Highlights of the Setup utility are described in the following table.

> **NOTE:** Support for Computer Setup options may vary depending on your specific hardware configuration.

Table 8-3.
Setup Utility Functions

Heading	Option	Description
File	System Information	Lists: Product name Processor type/speed/stepping Cache size (L1/L2) Installed memory size and frequency System ROM (includes family name and version) System board revision Chassis serial number Asset tracking number Integrated MAC for embedded, enabled NIC (if applicable)
	About	Displays copyright notice.
	Set Time and Date	Allows you to set system time and date.
	Save to Diskette	Saves system configuration, including CMOS, to a blank, formatted 1.44-MB diskette.
	Restore from Diskette	Restores system configuration, including CMOS, from a diskette.
	Set Defaults and Exit	Restores factory default settings, which includes clearing any established passwords.
	Ignore Changes and Exit	Exits Computer Setup without applying or saving any changes.
	Save Changes and Exit	Saves changes to system configuration and exits Computer Setup.
Storage	Device Configuration	Lists all installed storage devices. The following options appear when a device is selected: **Diskette Type** (For legacy diskette drives only) Identifies the highest capacity media type accepted by the diskette drive. Options are 3.5" 1.44 MB, 3.5" 720 KB, 5.25" 1.2 MB, 5.25" 360 KB, and Not Installed. **Drive Emulation** (LS-120 and ZIP drives only) Allows you to select a drive emulation type for a storage device. (For example, a Zip drive can be made bootable by selecting hard disk or diskette emulation.) **Transfer Mode** (IDE devices only) Specifies the active data transfer mode. Options (subject to device capabilities) are PIO 0, Max PIO, Enhanced DMA, Ultra DMA 0, and Max UDMA.

Continued

Table 8-3. Setup Utility Functions *Continued*

Heading	Option	Description
Storage *(continued)*	Device Configuration *(continued)*	**Translation Mode** (IDE disks only) Lets you select the translation mode to be used for the device. This enables the BIOS to access disks partitioned and formatted on other systems and may be necessary for users of older versions of Unix (e.g., SCO Unix version 3.2). Options are Bit-Shift, LBA Assisted, User, and None.
		△ **CAUTION:** Ordinarily, the translation mode selected automatically by the BIOS should not be changed. If the selected translation mode is not compatible with the translation mode that was active when the disk was partitioned and formatted, the data on the disk will be inaccessible.
		Translation Parameters (IDE Disks only) Allows you to specify the parameters (logical cylinders, heads, and sectors per track) used by the BIOS to translate disk I/O requests (from the operating system or an application) into terms the hard drive can accept. Logical cylinders may not exceed 1024. The number of heads may not exceed 256. The number of sectors per track may not exceed 63. These fields are only visible and changeable when the drive translation mode is set to User.
		Multisector Transfers (IDE ATA devices on*ly*) Specifies how many sectors are transferred per multi-sector PIO operation. Options (subject to device capabilities) are Disabled, 8, and 16.
		Quiet Drive *(*available on select drives only*)* Performance - Allows the drive to operate at maximum performance. Quiet (will not be displayed if not supported by drive)- Reduces noise from the drive during operation. When set to Quiet, the drive will not operate at maximum performance.
	Storage Options	**Removable Media Boot** Enables/disables ability to boot the system from removable media. **Note**: After saving changes to Removable Media Boot, the computer will restart. Turn the computer off, then on, manually.
		Removable Media Write Enables/disables ability to write data to removable media. **Note**: This feature applies only to legacy diskette, IDE LS-120 Superdisk, and IDE PD-CD drives.
		Primary IDE Controller Allows you to enable or disable the primary IDE controller.
		Secondary IDE Controller Allows you to enable or disable the secondary IDE controller.
		Diskette MBR Validation Allows you to enable or disable strict validation of the diskette Master Boot Record (MBR). **Note:** If you use a bootable diskette image that you *know* to be valid, and it does not boot with Diskette MBR Validation enabled, you may need to disable this option in order to use the diskette.

Continued

Table 8-3. Setup Utility Functions *Continued*

Heading	Option	Description
Storage *(continued)*	DPS Self-Test	Allows user to execute self-tests on IDE hard drives capable of performing the Drive Protection System (DPS) self-tests. Note: This selection will only appear when at least one drive capable of performing the IDE DPS self-tests is attached to the system
	Boot Order	Allows user to specify the order in which attached peripheral devices (such as diskette drive, hard drive, CD-ROM, or network interface card) are checked for a bootable operating system image. Each device on the list may be individually excluded from or included for consideration as a bootable operating system source. **Note**: MS-DOS drive lettering assignments may not apply after a non-MS-DOS operating system has started. To boot **one time** from a device other than the default device specified in Boot Order, restart the computer and press F9 when the F10=Setup message appears on the screen. When POST is completed, a list of bootable devices is displayed. Use the arrow keys to select a device and press the Enter key.
Security	Setup Password	Allows user to set and enable setup (administrator) password. **Note**: If the setup password is set, it is required to change Computer Setup options, flash the ROM, and make changes to certain plug and play settings under Windows. Also, this password must be set in order to use some Compaq remote security tools. See the *Troubleshooting Guide* for more information.
	Power-On Password	Allows user to set and enable power-on password. See the *Troubleshooting Guide* for more information.
	Password Options	Allows user to: Enable/disable network server mode. **Note:** This selection will appear only if a power-on password is set. Specify whether password is required for warm boot (CTRL+ALT+DEL). **Note**: This selection is available only when Network Server Mode is disabled. See the *Desktop Management Guide* for more information.
	Smart Cover	Allows user to: Enable/disable the Smart Cover Lock Enable/disable Smart Cover Sensor. **Notify User** alerts the user that the sensor has detected that the cover has been removed**. Setup Password** requires that the setup password be entered to boot the computer if the sensor detects that the cover has been removed. Feature supported on select models only. Refer to the *Desktop Management Guide* for more information.

Continued

Table 8-3. Setup Utility Functions *Continued*

Heading	Option	Description
Security *(continued)*	Master Boot Record Security	Allows user to enable or disable Master Boot Record (MBR) Security. When enabled, the BIOS rejects all requests to write to the MBR on the current bootable disk. Each time the computer is powered on or rebooted, the BIOS compares the MBR of the current bootable disk to the previously-saved MBR. If changes are detected, you are given the option of saving the MBR on the current bootable disk, restoring the previously-saved MBR, or disabling MBR Security. You must know the setup password, if one is set. **Note**: Disable MBR Security before intentionally changing the formatting or partitioning of the current bootable disk. Several disk utilities (such as FDISK and FORMAT) attempt to update the MBR. If MBR Security is enabled and disk accesses are being serviced by the BIOS, write requests to the MBR are rejected, causing the utilities to report errors. If MBR Security is enabled and disk accesses are being serviced by the operating system, any MBR change will be detected by the BIOS during the next reboot, and an MBR Security warning message will be displayed.
	Save Master Boot Record	Saves a backup copy of the Master Boot Record of the current bootable disk. **Note**: Only appears if MBR Security is enabled.
	Restore Master Boot Record	Restores the backup Master Boot Record to the current bootable disk. **Note**: Only appears if all of the following conditions are true: MBR Security is enabled A backup copy of the MBR has been previously saved The current bootable disk is the same disk from which the backup copy of the MBR was saved.
	Device Security	Enables/disables serial, parallel, and USB ports and audio security.
	Network Service Boot	Enables/disables the computer's ability to boot from an operating system installed on a network server. (Feature available on NIC models only; the network controller must reside on the PCI bus or be embedded on the system board.)
	System IDs	Allows user to set: Asset tag (16-byte identifier) and Ownership Tag (80-byte identifier displayed during POST) - Refer to the *Desktop Management* guide for more information Chassis serial number or Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) number - If current number is invalid (these ID numbers are normally set in the factory and are used to uniquely identify the system) Keyboard locale setting (e.g., English or German) for System ID entry.

Continued

Table 8-3. Setup Utility Functions *Continued*

Heading	Option	Description
Power	Energy Saver	Allows user to set the energy saver mode (advanced, disable, or minimal). **Note:** In the minimal energy saver mode setting, the hard drive and system do not go into energy saver mode, but the setting allows you to press the power button to suspend the system. This option is not available under ACPI-enabled operating systems.
	Timeouts	Allows user to disable or manually select timeout values for the system and/or all attached IDE hard drives. **Note:** This option has no effect under ACPI-enabled operating systems. This selection will only appear when energy saver mode is set to advanced.
	Energy Saver Options	Allows user to set: Power button configuration (on/off or sleep/wake) under APM-enabled operating systems Power LED blink in suspend mode (enable/disable). This option is not available under ACPI-enabled operating systems. **Note:** Energy Saver Options will not appear if the energy saver mode is disabled.
Advanced (Advanced users only)	Power-On Options	Allows user to set: POST mode (QuickBoot, FullBoot, or FullBoot every 1-30 days) POST messages (enable/disable) Safe POST (enable/disable) F10 prompt (enable/disable) F12 prompt (enable/disable) Option ROM prompt (enable/disable) Remote wakeup boot sequence (remote server/local hard drive) After power loss (off/on) If you connect your computer to an electric power strip, and would like to turn on power to the computer using the switch on the power strip, set this option to on. **Note:** If you turn off power to your computer using the switch on a power strip, you will not be able to use the suspend/sleep feature or the Remote Management features. UUID (Universal Unique Identifier) (enable/disable)
	Onboard Devices	Allows you to set resources for or disable onboard system devices (diskette controller, serial port, parallel port).
	PCI Devices	Lists currently installed PCI devices and their IRQ settings. Allows you to reconfigure IRQ settings for these devices or to disable them entirely.

Continued

Table 8-3. Setup Utility Functions *Continued*

Heading	Option	Description
Advanced *(continued)*	Bus Options	Allows user to enable or disable: PCI bus mastering, which allows a PCI device to take control of the PCI bus; PCI VGA palette snooping, which sets the VGA palette snooping bit in PCI configuration space; this is only needed with more than one graphics controller installed; PCI SERR# Generation.
	Device Options	Allows user to set: Printer mode (bi-directional, EPP & ECP, output only); Num Lock state at power-on (off/on); PME (power management event) wakeup events (enable/disable); Processor cache (enable/disable); Processor Number (enable/disable) for Pentium III processors; ACPI S3 support (enable/disable). S3 is an ACPI (advanced configuration and power interface) sleep state that some add-in hardware options may not support; AGP Aperture size (options vary depending on platform) allows you to modify the size of your AGP aperture size window.
	PCI VGA Configuration	Appears only if there are multiple PCI video adapters in the system. Allows users to specify which VGA controller will be the "boot" or primary VGA controller.

8.5   CLIENT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

Table 8-4 lists the client management BIOS functions supported by the systems covered in this guide. These functions, designed to support intelligent manageability applications, are Compaq-specific unless otherwise indicated.

Table 8-4.
Client Management Functions (INT15)

AX	Function	Mode
E800h	Get system ID	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.
E813h	Get monitor data	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.
E814h	Get system revision	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.
E816h	Get temperature status	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.
E817h	Get drive attribute	Real
E818h	Get drive off-line test	Real
E819h	Get chassis serial number	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.
E820h [1]	Get system memory map	Real
E81Ah	Write chassis serial number	Real
E81Bh	Get hard drive threshold	Real
E81Eh	Get hard drive ID	Real
E827h	DIMM EEPROM Access	Real, 16-, & 32-bit Prot.

NOTE:
       [1] Industry standard function.

All 32-bit protected-mode functions are accessed by using the industry-standard BIOS32 Service Directory. Using the service directory involves three steps:

1.   Locating the service directory.
2.   Using the service directory to obtain the entry point for the client management functions.
3.   Calling the client management service to perform the desired function.

The BIOS32 Service Directory is a 16-byte block that begins on a 16-byte boundary between the physical address range of 0E0000h-0FFFFFh. The format is as follows:

Offset	No. Bytes	Description
00h	4	Service identifier (four ASCII characters)
04h	4	Entry point for the BIOS32 Service Directory
08h	1	Revision level
09h	1	Length of data structure (no. of 16-byte units)
0Ah	1	Checksum (should add up to 00h)
0Bh	5	Reserved (all 0s)

To support Windows NT an additional table to the BIOS32 table has been defined to contain 32-bit pointers for the DDC locations. The Windows NT extension table is as follows:

```
; Extension to BIOS SERVICE directory table (next paragraph)

        db      "32OS"          ; sig
        db      2               ; number of entries in table
        db      "$DDC"          ; DDC POST buffer sig
        dd      ?               ; 32-bit pointer
        dw      ?               ; byte size
        db      "$ERB"          ; ESCD sig
        dd      ?               ; 32-bit pointer
        dw      ?               ; bytes size
```

The service identifier for client management functions is "$CLM." Once the service identifier is found and the checksum verified, a FAR call is invoked using the value specified at offset 04h to retrieve the CM services entry point. The following entry conditions are used for calling the Desktop Management service directory:

```
INPUT:
        EAX             = Service Identifier [$CLM]
        EBX (31..8)     = Reserved
        EBX (7..0)      = Must be set to 00h
        CS              = Code selector set to encompass the physical page holding
                            entry point as well as the immediately following physical page.
                            It must have the same base. CS is execute/read.
        DS              = Data selector set to encompass the physical page holding
                            entry point as well as the immediately following physical page.
                            It must have the same base. DS is read only.
        SS              = Stack selector must provide at least 1K of stack space and be 32-bit.
        (I/O permissions must be provided so that the BIOS can support as necessary)

OUTPUT:
        AL              = Return code:
                            00h, requested service is present
                            80h, requested service is not present
                            81h, un-implemented function specified in BL
                            86h and CF=1, function not supported
        EBX             = Physical address to use as the selector BASE for the service
        ECX             = Value to use as the selector LIMIT for the service
        EDX             = Entry point for the service relative to the BASE returned in EBX
```

The following subsections provide a brief description of key Client Management functions.

8.5.1 SYSTEM ID AND ROM TYPE

Applications can use the INT 15, AX=E800h BIOS function to identify the type of system. This function will return the system ID in the BX register. These systems have the following IDs and ROM family types:

System	System ID	ROM Family	PnP ID
Small Form Factor:			
w/815E-based graphics	688h	686P2	CPQ0004
w/NVIDIA graphics	680h	686P3	CPQ0003
Slim Desktop/Configurable Minitower	684h	686P2	CPQ0005

The ROM family and version numbers can be verified with the Setup utility or the Compaq Insight Manager or Diagnostics applications.

8.5.2 EDID RETRIEVE

The BIOS function INT 15, AX=E813h is a tri-modal call that retrieves the VESA extended display identification data (EDID). Two subfunctions are provided: AX=E813h BH=00h retrieves the EDID information while AX=E813h BX=01h determines the level of DDC support.

Input:
```
        AX       = E813h
        BH       = 00 Get EDID .
        BH       = 01 Get DDC support level

        If BH = 00 then
        DS:(E)SI = Pointer to a buffer (128 bytes) where ROM will return block
        If 32-bit protected mode then
        DS:(E)SI = Pointer to $DDC location
```

Output:
(Successful)
```
        If BH    = 0:
                  DS:SI=Buffer with EDID file.
        CX        = Number of bytes written
        CF        = 0
        AH        =00h Completion of command

        If BH    = 1:
        BH        = System DDC support
                    <0>=1 DDC1 support
                    <1>=1 DDC2 support
        BL        = Monitor DDC support
                    <0>=1 DDC1 support
                    <1>=1 DDC2 support
                    <2>=1 Screen blanked during transfer
```
(Failure)
```
        CF        = 1
        AH        = 86h or 87h
```

8.5.3 TEMPERATURE STATUS

The BIOS includes a function (INT15, AX=E816h) to retrieve the status of a system's interior temperature. This function allows an application to check whether the temperature situation is at a Normal, Caution, or Critical condition.

8.5.4 DRIVE FAULT PREDICTION

The Compaq BIOS directly supports Drive Fault Prediction for IDE-type hard drives. This feature is provided through two Client Management BIOS calls. Function INT 15, AX=E817h is used to retrieve a 512-byte block of drive attribute data while the INT 15, AX=E81Bh is used to retrieve the drive's warranty threshold data. If data is returned indicating possible failure then the following message is displayed:

> "1720-SMART Hard Drive detects imminent failure"

8.6   PNP SUPPORT

The BIOS includes Plug 'n Play (PnP) support for PnP version 1.0A. Table 8-5 lists the PnP functions supported.

Table 8-5.
PnP BIOS Functions

Function	Register
00h	Get number of system device nodes
01h	Get system device node
02h	Set system device node
03h	Get event
04h	Send message
50h	Get SMBIOS Structure Information
51h	Get Specific SMBIOS Structure

The BIOS call INT 15, AX=E841h, BH=01h can be used by an application to retrieve the default settings of PnP devices for the user. The application should use the following steps for the display function:

1. Call PnP function 01(get System Device Node) for each devnode with bit 1 of the control flag set (get static configuration) and save the results.
2. Call INT 15, AX=E841h, BH=01h.
3. Call PnP "Get Static Configuration" for each devnode and display the defaults.
4. If the user chooses to save the configuration, no further action is required. The system board devices will be configured at the next boot. If the user wants to abandon the changes, then the application must call PnP function 02 (Set System Device Node) for each devnode (with bit 1 of the control flag set for static configuration) with the results from the calls made prior to invoking this function.

8.6.1 SMBIOS

In support of the DMI specification the PnP functions 50h and 51h are used to retrieve the SMBIOS data. Function 50h retrieves the number of structures, size of the largest structure, and SMBIOS version. Function 51h retrieves a specific structure. This system supports SMBIOS version 2.3.1 and the following structure types:

Type	Data
0	BIOS Information
1	System Information
3	System Enclosure or Chassis
4	Processor Information
7	Cache Information
8	Port Connector Information
9	System Slots
13	BIOS Language Information
15	System Event Log Information
16	Physical Memory Array
17	Memory Devices
19	Memory Array Mapped Addresses
20	Memory Device Mapped Addresses
31	Boot Integrity Service Entry Point
32	System Boot Information
128	OEM Defined Structure with Intel Alert-On-LAN (AOL) Information

NOTE: System information on these systems is handled exclusively through the SMBIOS. The System Information Table (SIT) method (and it's associated BIOS functions) used on previous systems is no longer supported.

8.7   POWER MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

The BIOS ROM provides three types of power management support: independent PM support; APM support, and ACPI support.

8.7.1 INDEPENDENT PM SUPPORT

The BIOS can provide power management (PM) of the system independently from an operating system that doesn't support APM (including DOS, Unix, NT & older versions of OS/2). In the Independent PM environment the BIOS and hardware timers determine when to switch the system to a different power state. State switching is not reported to the OS.

8.7.1.1 Staying Awake In Independent PM

There are two "Time-out to Standy" timers used in independent PM: the System Timer and the IDE Hard Drive Timer.

System Timer

In POST, the BIOS enables a timer in the ICH that generates an SMI once per minute. When the BIOS detects the SMI it checks status bits in the ICH for device activity. If any of the device activity status bits are set at the time of the 1-minute SMI, BIOS resets the time-out minute countdown. The system timer can be configured through the Setup utility for counting down 0, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 120, 180, or 240 minutes. The following devices are checked for activity:

♦   Keyboard
♦   Mouse
♦   Serial port(s)
♦   Parallel port
♦   IDE primary controller

> **NOTE:** The secondary controller is NOT included. This is done to support auto-sense of a CD-ROM insertion (auto-run) in case Windows or NT is running. Note also that SCSI drive management is the responsibility of the SCSI driver. Any IDE hard drive access resets the hard drive timer.

IDE Hard Drive Timer

During POST, an inactivity timer each IDE hard drive is set to control hard drive spin down. Although this activity is independent of the system timer, the system will not go to sleep until the primary IDE controller has been inactive for the **system** time-out time. The hard drive timer can be configured through the Setup utility for being disabled or counting down 10, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120, 180, or 240 minutes, after which time the hard drive will spin down.

8.7.1.2 Going to Sleep in Independent PM

When a time-out timer expires, Standby for that timer occurs.

System Standby

When the system acquires the Standby mode the BIOS performs two duties:

1. Blanks the screen.

2. Turns off Vsync (to reduce CRT heater voltage).

Since the hard drive inactivity timer is in the drive and triggered by drive access, the system can be in Standby with the hard drives still spinning (awake).

> $\triangle$ **NOTE:** The BIOS does not turn the fan(s) off (as on previous products).

IDE Hard Drive Standby

During hard drive standby the platters stop spinning. Depending on drive type, some hard drives will also cut power to some of the drive electronics that are not needed. The drives can be in this state with the system still awake.

8.7.1.3 Suspend

Suspend is not supported in the Independent PM mode.

8.7.1.4 System OFF

When the system is turned Off but still plugged into a live AC outlet the NIC, ICH2, and I/O components continue to receive auxiliary power in order to power-up as the result of a Magic Packet™ being received over a network. Some NICs are able to wake up a system from Standby in PM, most require their Windows/NT driver to reset them after one wake-up.

8.7.1.5 Waking Up in Independent PM

Activity of either of the following devices will cause the system to wake up with the screen restored:

♦ Keyboard
♦ Mouse (if driver installed)

The hard drive will not spin up until it is accessed. Any hard drive access will cause it to wake up and resume spinning. Since the BIOS returns to the currently running software, it is possible for the drive to spin up while the system is in Standby with the screen blanked.

8.7.2 ACPI SUPPORT

This system meets the hardware and firmware requirements for being ACPI compliant.
This system supports the following ACPI functions:

♦ PM timer
♦ Power button
♦ Power button override
♦ RTC alarm
♦ Sleep/Wake logic (S1,S3, S4 (Windows 2000), S5)
♦ C1 state (Halt)
♦ PCI Power Management Event (PME)

8.7.3 APM 1.2 SUPPORT

Advanced Power Management (APM) is an extension of power management. In APM, the O/S
decides when a transition to another power state should occur. If going to Standby or Suspend, it
notifies all APM-aware drivers requesting approval for the state change. If all drivers approve (the
BIOS is not involved in this process) each is instructed to go to that state, then the BIOS is told to
go to that state. All versions of Windows, later versions of OS/2 and Linux support APM. . The
BIOS ROM for these systems support APM 1.2

The APM functions are initialized when the O/S loads. An INT 15h call is made to see if APM is
supported by the BIOS, and at what level (1.0, 1.1 or 1.2). After that, the O/S gets a 32-bit address
from the BIOS ROM so it can subsequently make 32 bit protected mode calls to access the
different APM functions in the ROM.

Table 8-6 lists all the APM calls that the O/S can make to the BIOS. These functions are the major
difference between PM and APM.

Table 8-6.
APM BIOS Functions

APM BIOS Function	Description
APM Installation Check	Allows the O/S to determine if the system's BIOS supports the APM functionality and if so, which version of the specification it supports. The APM version number returned from this call is the highest level of APM supported by the BIOS.
APM Real Mode Interface Connect	Establishes the cooperative interface between the O/S and the BIOS. The BIOS provides OEM-defined power management functionality before the interface is established. Once the interface is established, the BIOS and the O/S Driver coordinate power management activities. The BIOS rejects an interface connect request if any real or protected mode connection already exists.
APM Protected Mode 16-bit	Initializes the 16-bit protected mode interface between the O/S and the BIOS. This interface allows a protected mode caller to invoke the BIOS functions without first switching into real or virtual-86 mode. This function must be invoked in real mode. This is not currently used by any O/S.
APM Protected Mode 32-bit	Iinitializes the 32-bit protected mode interface between the O/S and the BIOS. This interface allows a protected mode O/S to invoke the BIOS functions without the need to first switch into real or virtual-86 mode. This function must be invoked in real mode.
APM Interface Disconnect	Breaks the cooperative connection between the BIOS and the O/S, and returns control of the power management policy to the BIOS. Power management parameter values (timer values, enable/disable settings, etc.) in effect at the time of the disconnect remain in effect.
CPU Idle	The O/S uses this call to tell BIOS that the system is idle.
CPU Busy	Informs the BIOS that the O/S has determined that the system is now busy. The BIOS should restore the CPU clock rate to full speed.
Set Power State	Sets the system or device specified in the power device ID into the requested power state.
Enable/Disable Power Management	Enables or disables all APM BIOS automatic power management. When disabled, the BIOS does not automatically power manage devices, enter the Standby State, enter the Suspend State, or take power saving steps in response to CPU Idle calls.
Restore Power-On Defaults	Re-initializes all power-on defaults.
Get Power Status	This call returns the system current power status.
Get PM Event	Returns the next pending PM event, or indicates if no PM events are pending.
Get Power State	Returns the device power state when a specific device ID is used.
Enable/Disable Device PM	Enables or disables APM BIOS automatic power management for a specified device. When disabled, the APM BIOS does not automatically power manage the device.
APM Driver Version	The O/S uses this call to indicate its level of APM support to the BIOS. The BIOS returns the APM connection version number.
Engage/Disengage PM	Engages or disengages cooperative power management of the system or device.
Get Capabilities	Returns the features which this particular APM 1.2 BIOS implementation supports.
Get/Set/Disable Resume Timer	This call gets, sets, or disables the system resume timer.
Enable/Disable Resume on Ring	Enables or disables the system's resume on ring indicator functionality. It also returns the enabled/disabled status.
Enable/Disable Timer Based Request	Enables or disables the BIOS's generation of global Standby and global Suspend requests based on inactivity timers.

8.7.3.1 Staying Awake in APM

There are two "Time-out to Standby" timers used in APM: the System Timer and the IDE had Drive Timer.

System Timer

In POST, the ROM enables a timer in the ICH2 that generates an SMI once per minute. When the ROM gets the SMI it checks status bits in the ICH2 for activity at any of the following devices:

♦ Keyboard
♦ Mouse
♦ Serial port(s)
♦ Parallel port
♦ IDE primary controller

> **NOTE:** The secondary controller is NOT included in order to support auto-sense of a CD-ROM insertion (auto-run) in case Windows or NT is running. Note also that management of SCSI drives is the responsibility of the SCSI driver. Any IDE hard drive access resets the hard drive timer.

If any of the activity status bits are set when the ROM gets the 1-minute SMI, it resets its time-out minute countdown according to the value (0 (default), 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 120, 180, or 240 minutes) selected in the Setup utility (F10).

IDE Hard Drive Timer

During POST, an inactivity timer in the IDE hard drive controller is set to control hard drive spin down. This activity is independent of the system timer. The BIOS will not inform the O/S that it is time to go to sleep until there has been no IDE primary activity for the **system** time-out time. The IDE hard drive will spin down when its timer expires according to the countdown time (0 (disabled), 10, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120, 180, or 240 minutes) selected in the Setup utility (F10).

> **NOTE:** The O/S (Win98 and later) can use the "Enable/Disable Timer Based Request" APM BIOS call to disable the system timer the BIOS uses so that the O/S can have direct control of the timing.

8.7.3.2 Going to Sleep in APM

There are three levels of system sleep in APM: System/Hard Drive Standby, System Suspend, and System Off.

System/Hard Drive Standby

System Standby is achieved only by a system timer time-out, at such time the following occurs:

1. All APM-aware device drivers put their respective devices into "Device Standby."
2. The O/S makes a BIOS call to go into System Standby.

    NOTE: The BIOS ROM of these systems will not turn the fan(s) off as on previous systems).

If the hard drive timer times out due to inactivity the hard drive motor stops spinning the platters. Depending on drive type, some drives can cut power to some of the drive electronics that are not needed during standby. The drive(s) can be in this state with the system still awake. Since the hard drive timer is in the hard drive controller and triggered by drive access, the system can be in Standby with the hard drive(s) still spinning (awake).

System Suspend

System Suspend is invoked by pressing and releasing the power switch in **under** four seconds (pressing and holding the switch **longer** that four seconds will turn the system off).. The system does **not** time-out from Standby into Suspend.

Upon invoking Suspend, the following actions occur:

1. All APM-aware device drivers put their associated devices into "Device Standby."
2. The O/S makes a BIOS call to go into Standby, and the BIOS:
    a. Spins down the IDE drives
    b. Halts the processor. The processor remains halted until the next 55ms tick from the RTC.
    c. At the 55ms tick of the RTC the processor executes a BIOS routine to check to see if anything has happened to wake the system up. If not, the processor is halted again.
    d. Steps B and C are repeated until a wake-up event occurs.

△ **NOTE:** These systems will not turn the fan(s) off as in previous systems.

System OFF

There are two ways to turn the system off:

1. Press and hold the power button for longer than 4 seconds (**not** recommended unless absolutely necessary).
2. Software shut-down as directed by the O/S. This, being the normal procedure, allows a NIC driver to re-arm the NIC for a Magic Packet™.

8.7.3.3 Waking Up in APM

Any of the following activities will cause the system to wake up:

♦ Keyboard
♦ Mouse
♦ Ring Indicate
♦ RTC alarm
♦ Magic Packet

The hard drive will not spin up until it is accessed. Any hard drive access will cause it to wake up and resume spinning. Since the BIOS returns to the currently running software, it is possible for the drive to spin up while the system is in Standby with the screen blanked.

8.8 USB LEGACY SUPPORT

The BIOS ROM checks the USB port, during POST, for the presence of a USB keyboard. This allows a system with only a USB keyboard to be used during ROM-based setup and also on a system with an OS that does not include a USB driver.

On such a system a keystroke will generate an SMI and the SMI handler will retrieve the data from the device and convert it to PS/2 data. The data will be passed to the keyboard controller and processed as in the PS/2 interface. Changing the delay and/or typematic rate of a USB keyboard though BIOS function INT 16 is not supported.

This page is intentionally blank.

Appendix A
ERROR MESSAGES AND CODES

A.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix lists the error codes and a brief description of the probable cause of the error.

△   **NOTE**: Errors listed in this appendix are applicable **only** for systems running **Compaq BIOS**.

△   **NOTE**: Not all errors listed in this appendix may be applicable to a particular system model and/or configuration.

A.2   BEEP/KEYBOARD LED CODES

Table A-1.
Beep/Keyboard LED Codes

Beeps	LED [1]	Probable Cause
1 short, 2 long	NUM lock blinking	Base memory failure.
1 long, 2 short	CAP lock blinking	Video/graphics controller failure.
2 long, 1 short	Scroll lock blinking	System failure (prior to video initialization).
1 long, 3 short	(None)	Boot block executing
None	All three blink in sequence	Keyboard locked in network mode.
None	NUM lock steady on	ROMPAQ diskette not present, bad, or drive not ready.
None	CAP lock steady on	Password prompt.
None	All three blink together	ROM flash failed.
None	All three steady on	Successful ROM flash.

NOTE:

[1] PS/2 keyboard only.

A.3   POWER-ON SELF TEST (POST) MESSAGES

Table A-2.
Power-On Self Test (POST) Messages

Error Message	Probable Cause
Invalid Electronic Serial Number	Chassis serial number is corrupt. Use Setup to enter a valid number.
Network Server Mode Active (w/o kybd)	System is in network mode.
101-Option ROM Checksum Error	A device's option ROM has failed/is bad.
102-system Board Failure	Failed ESCD write, A20, timer, or DMA controller.
150-Safe POST Active	An option ROM failed to execute on a previous boot.
162-System Options Not Set	Invalid checksum, RTC lost power, or invalid configuration.
163-Time & Date Not Set	Date and time information in CMOS is not valid.
164-Memory Size Error	Memory has been added or removed.
201-Memory Error	Memory test failed.
213-Incompatible Memory Module	BIOS detected installed DIMM(s) as being not compatible.
216-Memory Size Exceeds Max	Installed memory exceeds the maximum supported by the system.
301-Keyboard Error	Keyboard interface test failed (improper connection or stuck key).
303-Keyboard Controller Error	Keyboard buffer failed empty (8042 failure or stuck key).
304-Keyboard/System Unit Error	Keyboard controller failed self-test.
404-Parallel Port Address Conflict	Current parallel port address is conflicting with another device.
510-Slpash Image Corrupt	Corrupted splash screen image. Restore default image w/ROMPAQ.
601-Diskette Controller Error	Diskette drive removed since previous boot.
912-Computer Cover Removed Since Last System Start Up	Cover (hood) removal has been detected by the Smart Cover Sensor.
917-Expansion Riser Not Detected	Expansion (backplane) board not seated properly.
1720-SMART Hard Drive Detects Imminent Failure	SMART circuitry on an IDE drive has detected possible equipment failure.
1721-SMART SCSI Hard Drive Detects Imminent Failure	SMART circuitry on a SCSI drive has detected possible equipment failure.
1801-Microcode Patch Error	A processor is installed for which the BIOS ROM has no patch. Check for ROM update.
1998-Master Boot Record Backup Has Been Lost	Backup copy of the hard drive master boot record is corrupted. Use Setup to restore the backup from the hard drive.
1999-Master Boot Record Has Changed. Press Any Key To Enter Setup to Restore the MBR.	If Master Boot Record Security is enabled, this message indicates that the MBR has changed since the backup was made.
2000-Master boot Record hard drive has changed	The hard drive has been changed. Use Setup to create a backup of the new hard drive.

A.4   SYSTEM ERROR MESSAGES (1xx-xx)

Table A-3.

System Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
101	Option ROM error	110-01	Programmable timer load data test failed
102	System board failure (see note)	110-02	Programmable timer dynamic test failed
103	System board failure	110-03	Program timer 2 load data test failed
104-01	Master int. cntlr. test fialed	111-01	Refresh detect test failed
104-02	Slave int. cntlr. test failed	112-01	Speed test Slow mode out of range
104-03	Int. cntlr. SW RTC inoperative	112-02	Speed test Mixed mode out of range
105-01	Port 61 bit <6> not at zero	112-03	Speed test Fast mode out of range
105-02	Port 61 bit <5> not at zero	112-04	Speed test unable to enter Slow mode
105-03	Port 61 bit <3> not at zero	112-05	Speed test unable to enter Mixed mode
105-04	Port 61 bit <1> not at zero	112-06	Speed test unable to enter Fast mode
105-05	Port 61 bit <0> not at zero	112-07	Speed test system error
105-06	Port 61 bit <5> not at one	112-08	Unable to enter Auto mode in speed test
105-07	Port 61 bit <3> not at one	112-09	Unable to enter High mode in speed test
105-08	Port 61 bit <1> not at one	112-10	Speed test High mode out of range
105-09	Port 61 bit <0> not at one	112-11	Speed test Auto mode out of range
105-10	Port 61 I/O test failed	112-12	Speed test variable speed mode inop.
105-11	Port 61 bit <7> not at zero	113-01	Protected mode test failed
105-12	Port 61 bit <2> not at zero	114-01	Speaker test failed
105-13	No int. generated by failsafe timer	116-xx	Way 0 read/write test failed
105-14	NMI not triggered by failsafe timer	162-xx	Sys. options failed (mismatch in drive type)
106-01	Keyboard controller test failed	163-xx	Time and date not set
107-01	CMOS RAM test failed	164-xx	Memory size
108-02	CMOS interrupt test failed	199-00	Installed devices test failed
108-03	CMOS not properly initialized (int.test)		
109-01	CMOS clock load data test failed		
109-02	CMOS clock rollover test failed		
109-03	CMOS not properly initialized (clk test)		

NOTE: A 102 message code may be caused by one of a variety of processor-related problems that may be solved by replacing the processor, although system board replacement may be needed.

A.5   MEMORY ERROR MESSAGES (2xx-xx)

Table A-4.
Memory Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause
200-04	Real memory size changed
200-05	Extended memory size changed
200-06	Invalid memory configuration
200-07	Extended memory size changed
200-08	CLIM memory size changed
201-01	Memory machine ID test failed
202-01	Memory system ROM checksum failed
202-02	Failed RAM/ROM map test
202-03	Failed RAM/ROM protect test
203-01	Memory read/write test failed
203-02	Error while saving block in read/write test
203-03	Error while restoring block in read/write test
204-01	Memory address test failed
204-02	Error while saving block in address test
204-03	Error while restoring block in address test
204-04	A20 address test failed
204-05	Page hit address test failed
205-01	Walking I/O test failed
205-02	Error while saving block in walking I/O test
205-03	Error while restoring block in walking I/O test
206-xx	Increment pattern test failed
207-xx	ECC failure
210-01	Memory increment pattern test
210-02	Error while saving memory during increment pattern test
210-03	Error while restoring memory during increment pattern test
211-01	Memory random pattern test
211-02	Error while saving memory during random memory pattern test
211-03	Error while restoring memory during random memory pattern test
213-xx	Incompatible DIMM in slot x
214-xx	Noise test failed
215-xx	Random address test

A.6   KEYBOARD ERROR MESSAGES (30x-xx)

Table A-5.
Keyboard Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
300-xx	Failed ID test	303-05	LED test, LED command test failed
301-01	Kybd short test, 8042 self-test failed	303-06	LED test, LED command test failed
301-02	Kybd short test, interface test failed	303-07	LED test, LED command test failed
301-03	Kybd short test, echo test failed	303-08	LED test, command byte restore test failed
301-04	Kybd short test, kybd reset failed	303-09	LED test, LEDs failed to light
301-05	Kybd short test, kybd reset failed	304-01	Keyboard repeat key test failed
302-xx	Failed individual key test	304-02	Unable to enter mode 3
302-01	Kybd long test failed	304-03	Incorrect scan code from keyboard
303-01	LED test, 8042 self-test failed	304-04	No Make code observed
303-02	LED test, reset test failed	304-05	Cannot /disable repeat key feature
303-03	LED test, reset failed	304-06	Unable to return to Normal mode
303-04	LED test, LED command test failed	--	--

A.7 PRINTER ERROR MESSAGES (4xx-xx)

Table A-6.
Printer Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
401-01	Printer failed or not connected	402-11	Interrupt test, data/cntrl. reg. failed
402-01	Printer data register failed	402-12	Interrupt test and loopback test failed
402-02	Printer control register failed	402-13	Int. test, LpBk. test., and data register failed
402-03	Data and control registers failed	402-14	Int. test, LpBk. test., and cntrl. register failed
402-04	Loopback test failed	402-15	Int. test, LpBk. test., and data/cntrl. reg. failed
402-05	Loopback test and data reg. failed	402-16	Unexpected interrupt received
402-06	Loopback test and cntrl. reg. failed	402-01	Printer pattern test failed
402-07	Loopback tst, data/cntrl. reg. failed	403-xx	Printer pattern test failed
402-08	Interrupt test failed	404-xx	Parallel port address conflict
402-09	Interrupt test and data reg. failed	498-00	Printer failed or not connected
402-10	Interrupt test and control reg. failed	--	--

A.8 VIDEO (GRAPHICS) ERROR MESSAGES (5xx-xx)

Table A-7.
Video (Graphics) Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
501-01	Video controller test failed	508-01	320x200 mode, color set 0 test failed
502-01	Video memory test failed	509-01	320x200 mode, color set 1 test failed
503-01	Video attribute test failed	510-01	640x200 mode test failed
504-01	Video character set test failed	511-01	Screen memory page test failed
505-01	80x25 mode, 9x14 cell test failed	512-01	Gray scale test failed
506-01	80x25 mode, 8x8 cell test failed	514-01	White screen test failed
507-01	40x25 mode test failed	516-01	Noise pattern test failed

See Table A-14 for additional graphics messages.

A.9   DISKETTE DRIVE ERROR MESSAGES (6xx-xx)

Table A-8.
Diskette Drive Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
6xx-01	Exceeded maximum soft error limit	6xx-20	Failed to get drive type
6xx-02	Exceeded maximum hard error limit	6xx-21	Failed to get change line status
6xx-03	Previously exceeded max soft limit	6xx-22	Failed to clear change line status
6xx-04	Previously exceeded max hard limit	6xx-23	Failed to set drive type in ID media
6xx-05	Failed to reset controller	6xx-24	Failed to read diskette media
6xx-06	Fatal error while reading	6xx-25	Failed to verify diskette media
6xx-07	Fatal error while writing	6xx-26	Failed to read media in speed test
6xx-08	Failed compare of R/W buffers	6xx-27	Failed speed limits
6xx-09	Failed to format a tract	6xx-28	Failed write-protect test
6xx-10	Failed sector wrap test	--	--

```
600-xx = Diskette drive ID test              609-xx = Diskette drive reset controller test
601-xx = Diskette drive format                   610-xx = Diskette drive change line test
602-xx = Diskette read test                      611-xx = Pri. diskette drive port addr. conflict
603-xx = Diskette drive R/W compare test         612-xx = Sec. diskette drive port addr. conflict
604-xx = Diskette drive random seek test             694-00 = Pin 34 not cut on 360-KB drive
605-xx = Diskette drive ID media                 697-00 = Diskette type error
606-xx = Diskette drive speed test               698-00 = Drive speed not within limits
607-xx = Diskette drive wrap test                699-00 = Drive/media ID error (run Setup)
608-xx = Diskette drive write-protect test
```

A.10   SERIAL INTERFACE ERROR MESSAGES (11xx-xx)

Table A-9.
Serial Interface Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
1101-01	UART DLAB bit failure	1101-13	UART cntrl. signal interrupt failure
1101-02	Line input or UART fault	1101-14	DRVR/RCVR data failure
1101-03	Address line fault	1109-01	Clock register initialization failure
1101-04	Data line fault	1109-02	Clock register rollover failure
1101-05	UART cntrl. signal failure	1109-03	Clock reset failure
1101-06	UART THRE bit failure	1109-04	Input line or clock failure
1101-07	UART Data RDY bit failure	1109-05	Address line fault
1101-08	UART TX/RX buffer failure	1109-06	Data line fault
1101-09	Interrupt circuit failure	1150-xx	Comm port setup error (run Setup)
1101-10	COM1 set to invalid INT	1151-xx	COM1 address conflict
1101-11	COM2 set to invalid INT	1152-xx	COM2 address conflict
1101-12	DRVR/RCVR cntrl. signal failure	1155-xx	COM port address conflict

A.11 MODEM COMMUNICATIONS ERROR MESSAGES (12xx-xx)

Table A-10.
Serial Interface Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
1201-XX	Modem internal loopback test	1204-03	Data block retry limit reached [4]
1201-01	UART DLAB bit failure	1204-04	RX exceeded carrier lost limit
1201-02	Line input or UART failure	1204-05	TX exceeded carrier lost limit
1201-03	Address line failure	1204-06	Time-out waiting for dial tone
1201-04	Data line fault	1204-07	Dial number string too long
1201-05	UART control signal failure	1204-08	Modem time-out waiting for remote response
1201-06	UART THRE bit failure	1204-09	Modem exceeded maximum redial limit
1201-07	UART DATA READY bit failure	1204-10	Line quality prevented remote response
1201-08	UART TX/RX buffer failure	1204-11	Modem time-out waiting for remote connection
1201-09	Interrupt circuit failure	1205-XX	Modem auto answer test
1201-10	COM1 set to invalid inturrupt	1205-01	Time-out waiting for SYNC [5]
1201-11	COM2 set to invalid	1205-02	Time-out waiting for response [5]
1201-12	DRVR/RCVR control signal failure	1205-03	Data block retry limit reached [5]
1201-13	UART control signal interrupt failure	1205-04	RX exceeded carrier lost limit
1201-14	DRVR/RCVR data failure	1205-05	TX exceeded carrier lost limit
1201-15	Modem detection failure	1205-06	Time-out waiting for dial tone
1201-16	Modem ROM, checksum failure	1205-07	Dial number string too long
1201-17	Tone detect failure	1205-08	Modem time-out waiting for remote response
1202-XX	Modem internal test	1205-09	Modem exceeded maximum redial limit
1202-01	Time-out waiting for SYNC [1]	1205-10	Line quality prevented remote response
1202-02	Time-out waiting for response [1]	1205-11	Modem time-out waiting for remote connection
1202-03	Data block retry limit reached [1]	1206-XX	Dial multi-frequency tone test
1202-11	Time-out waiting for SYNC [2]	1206-17	Tone detection failure
1202-12	Time-out waiting for response [2]	1210-XX	Modem direct connect test
1202-13	Data block retry limit reached [2]	1210-01	Time-out waiting for SYNC [6]
1202-21	Time-out waiting for SYNC [3]	1210-02	Time-out waiting for response [6]
1202-22	Time-out waiting for response [3]	1210-03	Data block retry limit reached [6]
1202-23	Data block retry limit reached [3]	1210-04	RX exceeded carrier lost limit
1203-XX	Modem external termination test	1210-05	TX exceeded carrier lost limit
1203-01	Modem external TIP/RING failure	1210-06	Time-out waiting for dial tone
1203-02	Modem external data TIP/RING fail	1210-07	Dial number string too long
1203-03	Modem line termination failure	1210-08	Modem time-out waiting for remote response
1204-XX	Modem auto originate test	1210-09	Modem exceeded maximum redial limit
1204-01	Time-out waiting for SYNC [4]	1210-10	Line quality prevented remote response
1204-02	Time-out waiting for response [4]	1210-11	Modem time-out waiting for remote connection

NOTES:

[1] Local loopback mode
[2] Analog loopback originate mode
[3] Analog loopback answer mode
[4] Modem auto originate test
[5] Modem auto answer test
[6] Modem direct connect test

A.12 SYSTEM STATUS ERROR MESSAGES (16xx-xx)

Table A-11.
System Status Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause
1601-xx	Temperature violation
1611-xx	Fan failure

A.13 HARD DRIVE ERROR MESSAGES (17xx-xx)

Table A-12.
Hard Drive Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
17xx-01	Exceeded max. soft error limit	17xx-51	Failed I/O read test
17xx-02	Exceeded max. Hard error limit	17xx-52	Failed file I/O compare test
17xx-03	Previously exceeded max. soft error limit	17xx-53	Failed drive/head register test
17xx-04	Previously exceeded max.hard error limit	17xx-54	Failed digital input register test
17xx-05	Failed to reset controller	17xx-55	Cylinder 1 error
17xx-06	Fatal error while reading	17xx-56	Failed controller RAM diagnostics
17xx-07	Fatal error while writing	17xx-57	Failed controller-to-drive diagnostics
17xx-08	Failed compare of R/W buffers	17xx-58	Failed to write sector buffer
17xx-09	Failed to format a track	17xx-59	Failed to read sector buffer
17xx-10	Failed diskette sector wrap during read	17xx-60	Failed uncorrectable ECC error
17xx-19	Cntlr. failed to deallocate bad sectors	17xx-62	Failed correctable ECC error
17xx-40	Cylinder 0 error	17xx-63	Failed soft error rate
17xx-41	Drive not ready	17xx-65	Exceeded max. bad sectors per track
17xx-42	Failed to recalibrate drive	17xx-66	Failed to initialize drive parameter
17xx-43	Failed to format a bad track	17xx-67	Failed to write long
17xx-44	Failed controller diagnostics	17xx-68	Failed to read long
17xx-45	Failed to get drive parameters from ROM	17xx-69	Failed to read drive size
17xx-46	Invalid drive parameters from ROM	17xx-70	Failed translate mode
17xx-47	Failed to park heads	17xx-71	Failed non-translate mode
17xx-48	Failed to move hard drive table to RAM	17xx-72	Bad track limit exceeded
17xx-49	Failed to read media in file write test	17xx-73	Previously exceeded bad track limit
17xx-50	Failed I/O write test	--	--

1700-xx = Hard drive ID test
1701-xx = Hard drive format test
1702-xx = Hard drive read test
1703-xx = Hard drive read/write compare test
1704-xx = Hard drive random seek test
1705-xx = Hard drive controller test
1706-xx = Hard drive ready test
1707-xx = Hard drive recalibrate test
1708-xx = Hard drive format bad track test
1709-xx = Hard drive reset controller test
1710-xx = Hard drive park head test
1714-xx = Hard drive file write test
1715-xx = Hard drive head select test
1716-xx = Hard drive conditional format test
1717-xx = Hard drive ECC test

1719-xx = Hard drive power mode test
1720-xx = SMART drive detects imminent failure
1721-xx = SCSI hard drive imminent failure
1724-xx = Net work preparation test
1736-xx = Drive monitoring test
1771-xx = Pri. IDE controller address conflict
1772-xx = Sec. IDE controller address conflict
1780-xx = Disk 0 failure
1781-xx = Disk 1 failure
1782-xx = Pri. IDE controller failure
1790-xx = Disk 0 failure
1791-xx = Disk 1 failure
1792-xx = Se. controller failure
1793-xx = Sec. Controller or disk failure
1799-xx = Invalid hard drive type

A.14   HARD DRIVE ERROR MESSAGES (19xx-xx)

Table A-13.
Hard Drive Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
19xx-01	Drive not installed	19xx-21	Got servo pulses second time but not first
19xx-02	Cartridge not installed	19xx-22	Never got to EOT after servo check
19xx-03	Tape motion error	19xx-23	Change line unset
19xx-04	Drive busy erro	19xx-24	Write-protect error
19xx-05	Track seek error	19xx-25	Unable to erase cartridge
19xx-06	Tape write-protect error	19xx-26	Cannot identify drive
19xx-07	Tape already Servo Written	19xx-27	Drive not compatible with controller
19xx-08	Unable to Servo Write	19xx-28	Format gap error
19xx-09	Unable to format	19xx-30	Exception bit not set
19xx-10	Format mode error	19xx-31	Unexpected drive status
19xx-11	Drive recalibration error	19xx-32	Device fault
19xx-12	Tape not Servo Written	19xx-33	Illegal command
19xx-13	Tape not formatted	19xx-34	No data detected
19xx-14	Drive time-out error	19xx-35	Power-on reset occurred
19xx-15	Sensor error flag	19xx-36	Failed to set FLEX format mode
19xx-16	Block locate (block ID) error	19xx-37	Failed to reset FLEX format mode
19xx-17	Soft error limit exceeded	19xx-38	Data mismatch on directory track
19xx-18	Hard error limit exceeded	19xx-39	Data mismatch on track 0
19xx-19	Write (probably ID) error	19xx-40	Failed self-test
19xx-20	NEC fatal error	19xx-91	Power lost during test

1900-xx = Tape ID test failed   1904-xx = Tape BOT/EOT test failed
1901-xx = Tape servo write failed   1905-xx = Tape read test failed
1902-xx = Tape format failed   1906-xx = Tape R/W compare test failed
1903-xx = Tape drive sensor test failed   1907-xx = Tape write-protect failed

A.15   VIDEO (GRAPHICS) ERROR MESSAGES (24xx-xx)

Table A-14.
Video (Graphics) Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
2402-01	Video memory test failed	2418-02	EGA shadow RAM test failed
2403-01	Video attribute test failed	2419-01	EGA ROM checksum test failed
2404-01	Video character set test failed	2420-01	EGA attribute test failed
2405-01	80x25 mode, 9x14 cell test failed	2421-01	640x200 mode test failed
2406-01	80x25 mode, 8x8 cell test failed	2422-01	640x350 16-color set test failed
2407-01	40x25 mode test failed	2423-01	640x350 64-color set test failed
2408-01	320x200 mode color set 0 test failed	2424-01	EGA Mono. text mode test failed
2409-01	320x200 mode color set 1 test failed	2425-01	EGA Mono. graphics mode test failed
2410-01	640x200 mode test failed	2431-01	640x480 graphics mode test failed
2411-01	Screen memory page test failed	2432-01	320x200 256-color set test failed
2412-01	Gray scale test failed	2448-01	Advanced VGA controller test failed
2414-01	White screen test failed	2451-01	132-column AVGA test failed
2416-01	Noise pattern test failed	2456-01	AVGA 256-color test failed
2417-01	Lightpen text test failed, no response	2458-xx	AVGA BitBLT test failed
2417-02	Lightpen text test failed, invalid response	2468-xx	AVGA DAC test failed
2417-03	Lightpen graphics test failed, no resp.	2477-xx	AVGA data path test failed
2417-04	Lightpen graphics tst failed, invalid resp.	2478-xx	AVGA BitBLT test failed
2418-01	EGA memory test failed	2480-xx	AVGA linedraw test failed

A.16 AUDIO ERROR MESSAGES (3206-xx)

Table A-15.
Audio Error Message

Message	Probable Cause
3206-xx	Audio subsystem internal error

A.17 DVD/CD-ROM ERROR MESSAGES (33xx-xx)

Table A-16.
DVD/CD-ROM Drive Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause
3301-xx	Drive test failed
3305-XX	Seek test failed

See Table A-18 for additional messages.

A.18 NETWORK INTERFACE ERROR MESSAGES (60xx-xx)

Table A-17.
Network Interface Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
6000-xx	Pointing device interface error	6054-xx	Token ring configuration test failed
6014-xx	Ethernet configuration test failed	6056-xx	Token ring reset test failed
6016-xx	Ethernet reset test failed	6068-xx	Token ring int. loopback test failed
6028-xx	Ethernet int. loopback test failed	6069-xx	Token ring ext. loopback test failed
6029-xx	Ethernet ext. loopback test failed	6089-xx	Token ring open

A.19 SCSI INTERFACE ERROR MESSAGES (65xx-xx, 66xx-xx, 67xx-xx)

Table A-18.
SCSI Interface Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
6nyy-02	Drive not installed	6nyy-33	Illegal controller command
6nyy-03	Media not installed	6nyy-34	Invalid SCSI bus phase
6nyy-05	Seek failure	6nyy-35	Invalid SCSI bus phase
6nyy-06	Drive timed out	6nyy-36	Invalid SCSI bus phase
6nyy-07	Drive busy	6nyy-39	Error status from drive
6nyy-08	Drive already reserved	6nyy-40	Drive timed out
6nyy-09	Reserved	6nyy-41	SSI bus stayed busy
6nyy-10	Reserved	6nyy-42	ACK/REQ lines bad
6nyy-11	Media soft error	6nyy-43	ACK did not deassert
6nyy-12	Drive not ready	6nyy-44	Parity error
6nyy-13	Media error	6nyy-50	Data pins bad
6nyy-14	Drive hardware error	6nyy-51	Data line 7 bad
6nyy-15	Illegal drive command	6nyy-52	MSG, C/D, or I/O lines bad
6nyy-16	Media was changed	6nyy-53	BSY never went busy
6nyy-17	Tape write-protected	6nyy-54	BSY stayed busy
6nyy-18	No data detected	6nyy-60	Controller CONFIG-1 register fault
6nyy-21	Drive command aborted	6nyy-61	Controller CONFIG-2 register fault
6nyy-24	Media hard error	6nyy-65	Media not unloaded
6nyy-25	Reserved	6nyy-90	Fan failure
6nyy-30	Controller timed out	6nyy-91	Over temperature condition
6nyy-31	Unrecoverable error	6nyy-92	Side panel not installed
6nyy-32	Controller/drive not connected	6nyy-99	Autoloader reported tape not loaded properly

n = 5, Hard drive   yy = 00, ID
  = 6, CD-ROM drive   = 03, Power check
  = 7, Tape drive.   = 05, Read
                                            = 06, SA/Media
                                            = 08, Controller
                                            = 23, Random read
                                            = 28, Media load/unload

A.20 POINTING DEVICE INTERFACE ERROR MESSAGES (8601-xx)

Table A-19.
Pointing Device Interface Error Messages

Message	Probable Cause	Message	Probable Cause
8601-01	Mouse ID fails	8601-07	Right block not selected
8601-02	Left mouse button is inoperative	8601-08	Timeout occurred
8601-03	Left mouse button is stuck closed	8601-09	Mouse loopback test failed
8601-04	Right mouse button is inoperative	8601-10	Pointing device is inoperative
8601-05	Right mouse button is stuck closed	8602-xx	I/F test failed
8601-06	Left block not selected	--	--

This page is intentionally blank.

Appendix B
ASCII CHARACTER SET

B.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix lists, in Table B-1, the 256-character ASCII code set including the decimal and hexadecimal values. All ASCII symbols may be called while in DOS or using standard text-mode editors by using the combination keystroke of holding the **Alt** key and using the Numeric Keypad to enter the decimal value of the symbol. The extended ASCII characters (decimals 128-255) can only be called using the **Alt** + Numeric Keypad keys.

NOTE: Regarding keystrokes, refer to notes at the end of the table. Applications may interpret multiple keystroke accesses differently or ignore them completely.

Table B-1.
ASCII Character Set

Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol
0	00	Blank	32	20	Space	64	40	@	96	60	'
1	01	☺	33	21	!	65	41	A	97	61	a
2	02	☻	34	22	"	66	42	B	98	62	b
3	03	♥	35	23	#	67	43	C	99	63	c
4	04	♦	36	24	$	68	44	D	100	64	d
5	05	♣	37	25	%	69	45	E	101	65	e
6	06	♠	38	26	&	70	46	F	102	66	f
7	07	●	39	27	'	71	47	G	103	67	g
8	08	◖	40	28	(	72	48	H	104	68	h
9	09	○	41	29	)	73	49	I	105	69	I
10	0A	◙	42	2A	*	74	4A	J	106	6A	j
11	0B	♂	43	2B	+	75	4B	K	107	6B	k
12	0C	♀	44	2C	`	76	4C	L	108	6C	l
13	0D	♪	45	2D	-	77	4D	M	109	6D	m
14	0E	♫	46	2E	.	78	4E	N	110	6E	n
15	0F	☼	47	2F	/	79	4F	O	111	6F	o
16	10	▶	48	30	0	80	50	P	112	70	p
17	11	◀	49	31	1	81	51	Q	113	71	q
18	12	↕	50	32	2	82	52	R	114	72	r
19	13	‼	51	33	3	83	53	S	115	73	s
20	14	¶	52	34	4	84	54	T	116	74	t
21	15	§	53	35	5	85	55	U	117	75	u
22	16	▬	54	36	6	86	56	V	118	76	v
23	17	↨	55	37	7	87	57	W	119	77	w
24	18	↑	56	38	8	88	58	X	120	78	x
25	19	↓	57	39	9	89	59	Y	121	79	y
26	1A	→	58	3A	:	90	5A	Z	122	7A	z
27	1B	←	59	3B	;	91	5B	[	123	7B	{
28	1C	∟	60	3C	<	92	5C	\	124	7C		
29	1D	↔	61	3D	=	93	5D	]	125	7D	}
30	1E	▲	62	3E	>	94	5E	^	126	7E	~
31	1F	▼	63	3F	?	95	5F	_	127	7F	△ [1]

Continued

Table B-1. ASCII Code Set *(Continued)*

Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol	Dec	Hex	Symbol
128	80	Ç	160	A0	á	192	C0	└	224	E0	α
129	81	ü	161	A1	í	193	C1	┴	225	E1	ß
130	82	é	162	A2	ó	194	C2	┬	226	E2	Γ
131	83	â	163	A3	ú	195	C3	├	227	E3	π
132	84	ä	164	A4	ñ	196	C4	─	228	E4	Σ
133	85	à	165	A5	Ñ	197	C5	┼	229	E5	σ
134	86	å	166	A6	ª	198	C6	╞	230	E6	µ
135	87	ç	167	A7	º	199	C7	╟	231	E7	τ
136	88	ê	168	A8	¿	200	C8	╚	232	E8	Φ
137	89	ë	169	A9	⌐	201	C9	╔	233	E9	Θ
138	8A	è	170	AA	¬	202	CA	╩	234	EA	Ω
139	8B	ï	171	AB	½	203	CB	╦	235	EB	δ
140	8C	î	172	AC	¼	204	CC	╠	236	EC	∞
141	8D	ì	173	AD	¡	205	CD	=	237	ED	φ
142	8E	Ä	174	AE	«	206	CE	╬	238	EE	ε
143	8F	Å	175	AF	»	207	CF	╧	239	EF	∩
144	90	É	176	B0	░	208	D0	╨	240	F0	≡
145	91	æ	177	B1	▒	209	D1	╤	241	F1	±
146	92	Æ	178	B2	▓	210	D2	╥	242	F2	≥
147	93	ô	179	B3	│	211	D3	╙	243	F3	≤
148	94	ö	180	B4	┤	212	D4	╘	244	F4	⌠
149	95	ò	181	B5	╡	213	D5	╒	245	F5	⌡
150	96	û	182	B6	╢	214	D6	╓	246	F6	÷
151	97	ù	183	B7	╖	215	D7	╫	247	F7	≈
152	98	ÿ	184	B8	╕	216	D8	╪	248	F8	°
153	99	Ö	185	B9	╣	217	D9	┘	249	F9	·
154	9A	Ü	186	BA	║	218	DA	┌	250	FA	·
155	9B	¢	187	BB	╗	219	DB	█	251	FB	√
156	9C	£	188	BC	╝	220	DC	▄	252	FC	ⁿ
157	9D	¥	189	BD	╜	221	DD	▌	253	FD	²
158	9E	₧	190	BE	╛	222	DE	▐	254	FE	■
159	9F	ƒ	191	BF	┐	223	DF	▀	255	FF	Blank

NOTES:

[1] Symbol not displayed.

Keystroke Guide:

Dec #	Keystroke(s)
0	Ctrl 2
1-26	Ctrl A thru Z respectively
27	Ctrl [
28	Ctrl
29	Ctrl]
30	Ctrl 6
31	Ctrl -
32	Space Bar
33-43	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol
44-47	Key w/corresponding symbol
48-57	Key w/corresponding symbol, numerical keypad w/Num Lock active
58	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol
59	Key w/corresponding symbol
60	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol
61	Key w/corresponding symbol
62-64	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol
65-90	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol or key w/corresponding symbol and Caps Lock active
91-93	Key w/corresponding symbol
94, 95	Shift and key w/corresponding symbol
96	Key w/corresponding symbol
97-126	Key w/corresponding symbol or Shift and key w/corresponding symbol and Caps Lock active
127	Ctrl -
128-255	Alt and decimal digit(s) of desired character

Appendix C
KEYBOARD

C.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes the Compaq keyboard that is included as standard with the system unit. The keyboard complies with the industry-standard classification of an "enhanced keyboard" and includes a separate cursor control key cluster, twelve "function" keys, and enhanced programmability for additional functions.
This appendix covers the following keyboard types:

♦   Standard enhanced keyboard.

♦   Space-Saver Windows-version keyboard featuring additional keys for specific support of the Windows operating system.

♦   Easy Access keyboard with additional buttons for internet accessibility functions.

Only one type of keyboard is supplied with each system. Other types may be available as an option.

> **NOTE:** This appendix discusses only the keyboard unit. The keyboard interface is a function of the system unit and is discussed in Chapter 5, Input/Output Interfaces.

Topics covered in this appendix include the following:

♦   Keystroke processing (C.2)   page C-2
♦   Connectors (C.3)   page C-16

C.2   KEYSTROKE PROCESSING

A functional block diagram of the keystroke processing elements is shown in Figure C-1. Power (+5 VDC) is obtained from the system through the PS/2-type interface. The keyboard uses a Z86C14 (or equivalent) microprocessor. The Z86C14 scans the key matrix drivers every 10 ms for pressed keys while at the same time monitoring communications with the keyboard interface of the system unit. When a key is pressed, a Make code is generated. A Break code is generated when the key is released. The Make and Break codes are collectively referred to as scan codes. All keys generate Make and Break codes with the exception of the Pause key, which generates a Make code only.
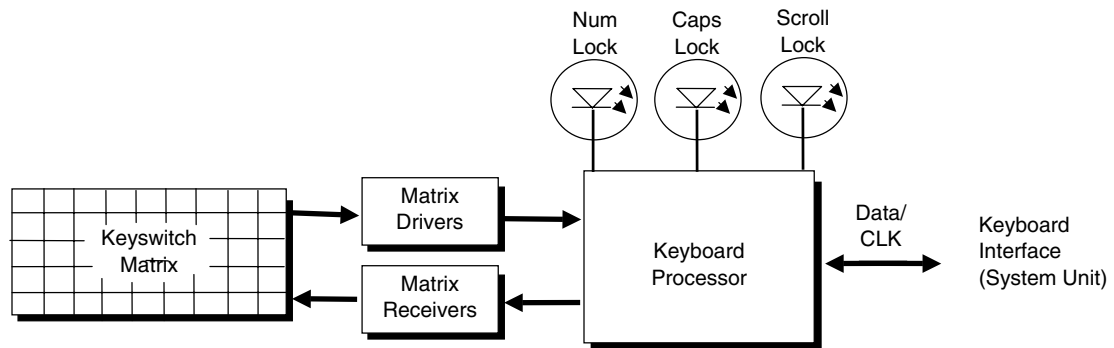
Figure C–1. Keystroke Processing Elements, Block Diagram

When the system is turned on, the keyboard processor generates a Power-On Reset (POR) signal after a period of 150 ms to 2 seconds. The keyboard undergoes a Basic Assurance Test (BAT) that checks for shorted keys and basic operation of the keyboard processor. The BAT takes from 300 to 500 ms to complete.

If the keyboard fails the BAT, an error code is sent to the CPU and the keyboard is disabled until an input command is received. After successful completion of the POR and BAT, a completion code (AAh) is sent to the CPU and the scanning process begins.

The keyboard processor includes a 16-byte FIFO buffer for holding scan codes until the system is ready to receive them. Response and typematic codes are not buffered. If the buffer is full (16 bytes held) a 17th byte of a successive scan code results in an overrun condition and the overrun code replaces the scan code byte and any additional scan code data (and the respective key strokes) are lost. Multi-byte sequences must fit entirely into the buffer before the respective keystroke can be registered.

C.2.1 PS/2-TYPE KEYBOARD TRANSMISSIONS

The PS/2-type keyboard sends two main types of data to the system; commands (or responses to system commands) and keystroke scan codes. Before the keyboard sends data to the system (specifically, to the 8042-type logic within the system), the keyboard verifies the clock and data lines to the system. If the clock signal is low (0), the keyboard recognizes the inhibited state and loads the data into a buffer. Once the inhibited state is removed, the data is sent to the system. Keyboard-to-system transfers (in the default mode) consist of 11 bits as shown in Figure C-2.

Parameter	Minimum	Nominal	Maximum
Tcy (clock cycle)	60 us	--	80 us
Tcl (clock low)	30 us	41 us	50 us
Tch (clock high)	30 us	--	40 us
Th-b-t (high-before-transmit)	--	20 us	--
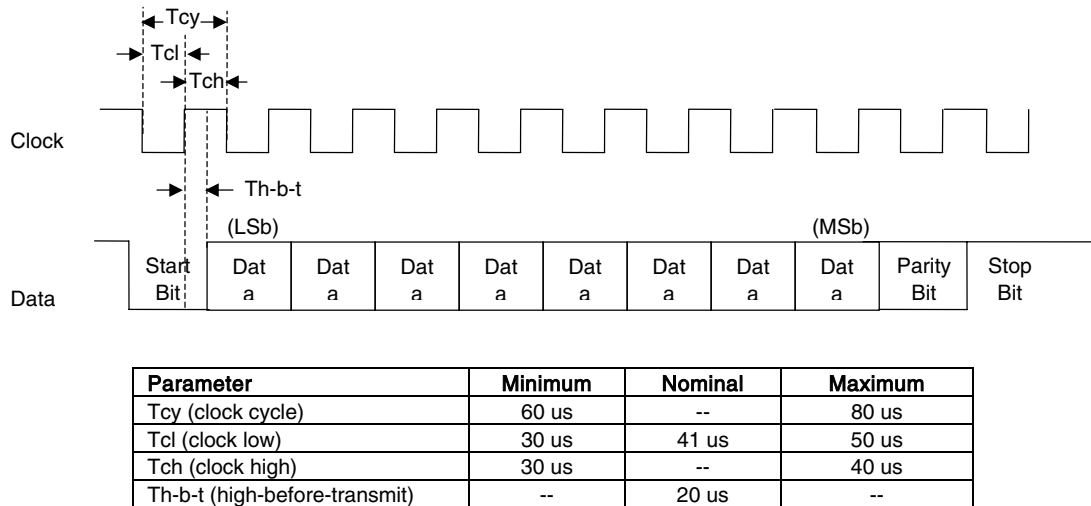
Figure C–2. PS/2 Keyboard-To-System Transmission, Timing Diagram

The system can halt keyboard transmission by setting the clock signal low. The keyboard checks the clock line every 60 us to verify the state of the signal. If a low is detected, the keyboard will finish the current transmission **if** the rising edge of the clock pulse for the parity bit has not occurred. The system uses the same timing relationships during reads (typically with slightly reduced time periods).

The enhanced keyboard has three operating modes:

♦   Mode 1 - PC-XT compatible
♦   Mode 2 - PC-AT compatible (default)
♦   Mode 3 - Select mode (keys are programmable as to make-only, break-only, typematic)

Modes can be selected by the user or set by the system. Mode 2 is the default mode. Each mode produces a different set of scan codes. When a key is pressed, the keyboard processor sends that key's make code to the 8042 logic of the system unit. The When the key is released, a release code is transmitted as well (except for the Pause key, which produces only a make code). The 8042-type logic of the system unit responds to scan code reception by asserting IRQ1, which is processed by the interrupt logic and serviced by the CPU with an interrupt service routine. The service routine takes the appropriate action based on which key was pressed.

C.2.2 USB-TYPE KEYBOARD TRANSMISSIONS

The USB-type keyboard sends essentially the same information to the system that the PS/2 keyboard does except that the data receives additional NRZI encoding and formatting (prior to leaving the keyboard) to comply with the USB I/F specification (discussed in chapter 5 of this guide).

Packets received at the system's USB I/F and decoded as originating from the keyboard result in an SMI being generated. An SMI handler routine is invoked that decodes the data and transfers the information to the 8042 keyboard controller where normal (legacy) keyboard processing takes place.

C.2.3 KEYBOARD LAYOUTS

Figures C-3 through C-8 show the key layouts for keyboards shipped with Compaq systems. Actual styling details including location of the Compaq logo as well as the numbers lock, caps lock, and scroll lock LEDs may vary.

C.2.3.1   Standard Enhanced Keyboards
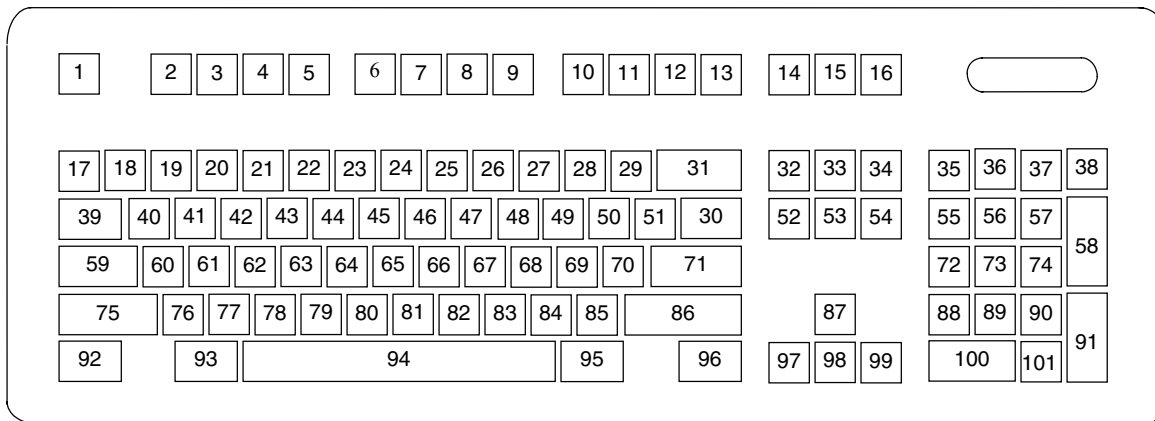
Figure C–3. U.S. English (101-Key) Keyboard Key Positions
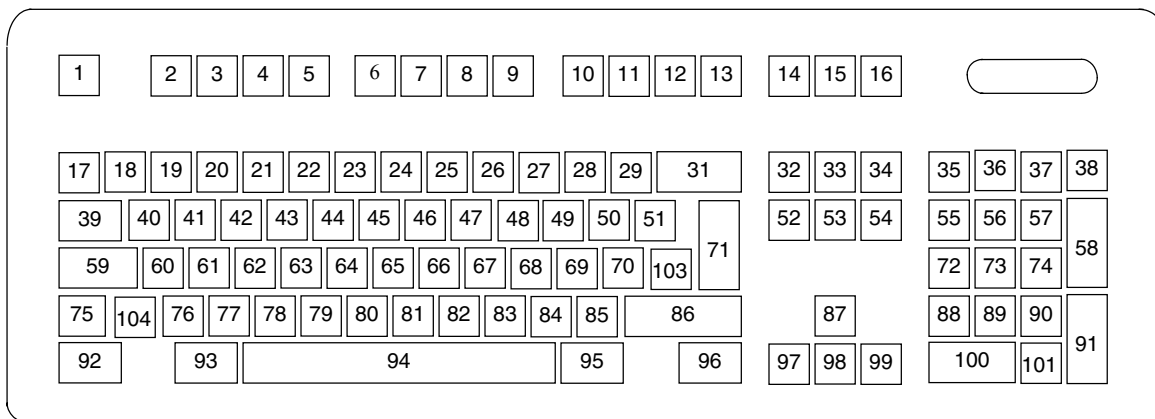
Figure C–4. National (102-Key) Keyboard Key Positions

C.2.3.2   Windows Enhanced Keyboards
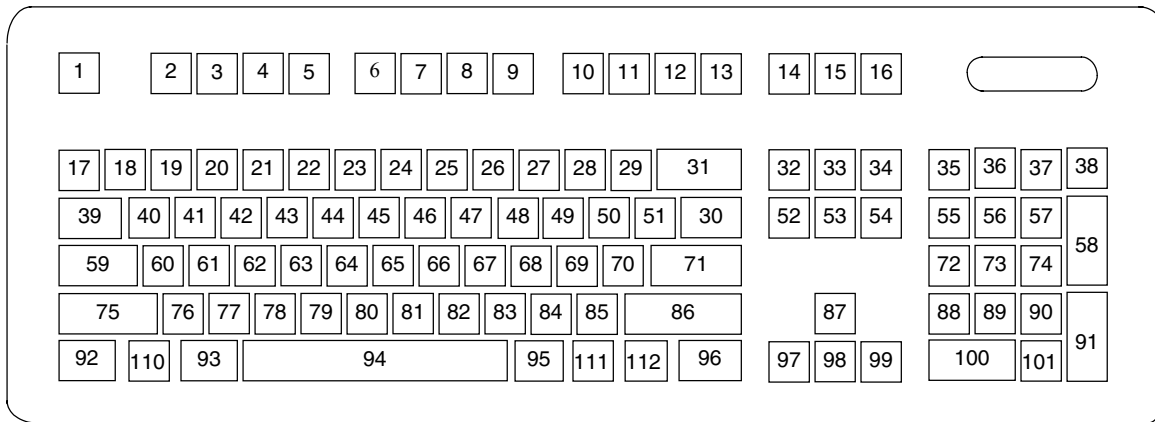
Figure C–5. U.S. English Windows (101W-Key) Keyboard Key Positions
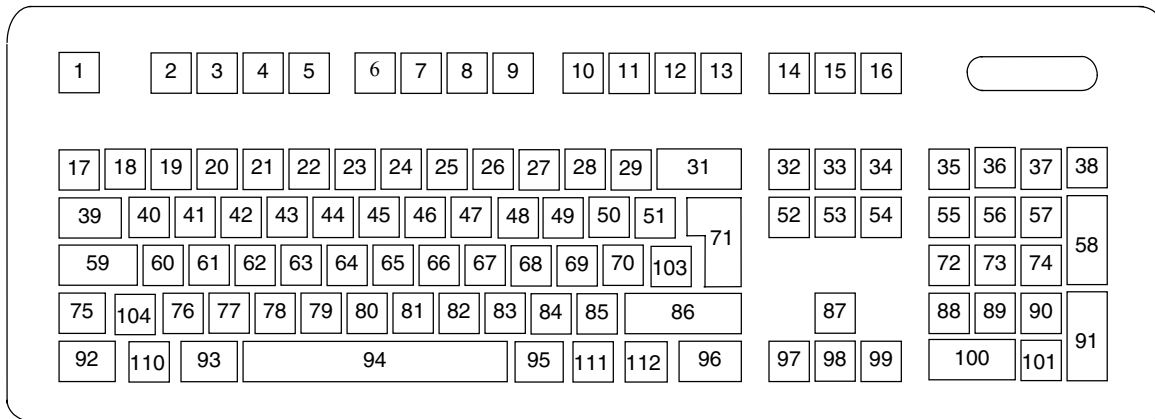
Figure C–6. National Windows (102W-Key) Keyboard Key Positions

C.2.3.3   Easy Access Keyboards

The Easy Access keyboard is a Windows Enhanced-type keyboard that includes special buttons allowing quick internet navigation. Depending on system, either a 7-button or an 8-button layout may be supplied.

The 7-button Easy Access Keyboard uses the layout shown in Figure C-7 and is available with either a legacy PS/2-type connection or a Universal Serial Bus (USB) type connection.

Btn 1   Btn 2   Btn 3   Btn 4   Btn 5   Btn 6   Btn 7
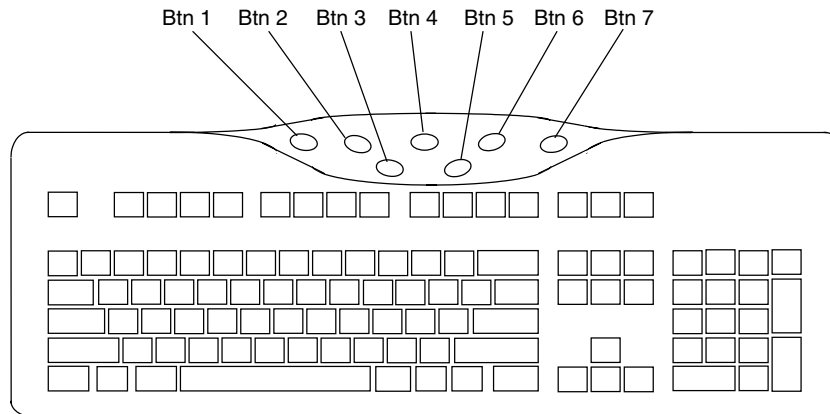
NOTE:
Main key positions same as Windows Enhanced (Figures C-5 or C-6).

Figure C–7.   7-Button Easy Access Keyboard Layout

The 8-button Easy Access Keyboard uses the layout shown in Figure C-8 and uses the PS/2-type connection.

Btn 1   Btn 2   Btn 3   Btn 4   Btn 5   Btn 6   Btn 7   Btn 8
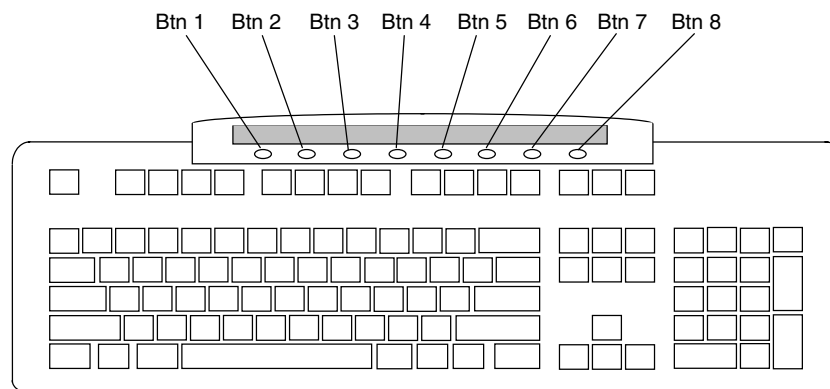
NOTE:
Main key positions same as Windows Enhanced (Figures C-5 or C-6).

Figure C–8.   8-Button Easy Access Keyboard Layout

C.2.4 KEYS

All keys generate a make code (when pressed) and a break code (when released) with the exception of the **Pause** key (pos. 16), which produces a make code only. All keys with the exception of the **Pause** and Easy Access keys are also typematic, although the typematic action of the **Shift**, **Ctrl**, **Alt**, **Num Lock**, **Scroll Lock**, **Caps Lock**, and **Ins** keys is suppressed by the BIOS. Typematic keys, when held down longer than 500 ms, send the make code repetitively at a 10-12 Hz rate until the key is released. If more than one key is held down, the last key pressed will be typematic.

C.2.4.1 Special Single-Keystroke Functions

The following keys provide the intended function in most applications and environments.

Caps Lock - The **Caps Lock** key (pos. 59), when pressed and released, invokes a BIOS routine that turns on the caps lock LED and shifts into upper case key positions 40-49, 60-68, and 76-82. When pressed and released again, these keys revert to the lower case state and the LED is turned off. Use of the **Shift** key will reverse which state these keys are in based on the **Caps Lock** key.

Num Lock - The **Num Lock** key (pos. 32), when pressed and released, invokes a BIOS routine that turns on the num lock LED and shifts into upper case key positions 55-57, 72-74, 88-90, 100, and 101. When pressed and released again, these keys revert to the lower case state and the LED is turned off.

The following keys provide special functions that require specific support by the application.

Print Scrn - The **Print Scrn** (pos. 14) key can, when pressed, generate an interrupt that initiates a print routine. This function may be inhibited by the application.

Scroll Lock - The **Scroll Lock** key (pos. 15) when pressed and released, , invokes a BIOS routine that turns on the scroll lock LED and inhibits movement of the cursor. When pressed and released again, the LED is turned off and the function is removed. This keystroke is always serviced by the BIOS (as indicated by the LED) but may be inhibited or ignored by the application.

Pause - The **Pause** (pos. 16) key, when pressed, can be used to cause the keyboard interrupt to loop, i.e., wait for another key to be pressed. This can be used to momentarily suspend an operation. The key that is pressed to resume operation is discarded. This function may be ignored by the application.

The **Esc**, **Fn** (function), **Insert**, **Home**, **Page Up**/**Down**, **Delete**, and **End** keys operate at the discretion of the application software.

C.2.4.2 Multi-Keystroke Functions

Shift - The **Shift** key (pos. 75/86), when held down, produces a shift state (upper case) for keys in positions 17-29, 30, 39-51, 60-70, and 76-85 as long as the **Caps Lock** key (pos. 59) is toggled off. If the **Caps Lock** key is toggled on, then a held **Shift** key produces the lower (normal) case for the identified pressed keys. The **Shift** key also reverses the **Num Lock** state of key positions 55-57, 72, 74, 88-90, 100, and 101.

Ctrl - The **Ctrl** keys (pos. 92/96) can be used in conjunction with keys in positions 1-13, 16, 17-34, 39-54, 60-71, and 76-84. The application determines the actual function. Both **Ctrl** key positions provide identical functionality. The pressed combination of **Ctrl** and **Break** (pos. 16) results in the generation of BIOS function INT 1Bh. This software interrupt provides a method of exiting an application and generally halts execution of the current program.

Alt - The **Alt** keys (pos. 93/95) can be used in conjunction with the same keys available for use with the **Ctrl** keys with the exception that position 14 (**SysRq**) is available instead of position 16 (**Break**). The **Alt** key can also be used in conjunction with the numeric keypad keys (pos. 55-57, 72-74, and 88-90) to enter the decimal value of an ASCII character code from 1-255. The application determines the actual function of the keystrokes. Both **Alt** key positions provide identical functionality. The combination keystroke of **Alt** and **SysRq** results in software interrupt 15h, AX=8500h being executed. It is up to the application to use or not use this BIOS function.

The **Ctrl** and **Alt** keys can be used together in conjunction with keys in positions 1-13, 17-34, 39-54, 60-71, and 76-84. The **Ctrl** and **Alt** key positions used and the sequence in which they are pressed make no difference as long as they are held down at the time the third key is pressed. The **Ctrl**, **Alt,** and **Delete** keystroke combination (required twice if in the Windows environment) initiates a system reset (warm boot) that is handled by the BIOS.

C.2.4.3 Windows Keystrokes

Windows-enhanced keyboards include three additional key positions. Key positions 110 and 111 (marked with the Windows logo) have the same functionality and are used by themselves or in combination with other keys to perform specific "hot-key" type functions for the Windows operating system. The defined functions of the Windows logo keys are listed as follows:

Keystroke	Function
Window Logo	Open Start menu
Window Logo + F1	Display pop-up menu for the selected object
Window Logo + TAB	Activate next task bar button
Window Logo + E	Explore my computer
Window Logo + F	Find document
Window Logo + CTRL + F	Find computer
Window Logo + M	Minimize all
Shift + Window Logo + M	Undo minimize all
Window Logo + R	Display Run dialog box
Window Logo + PAUSE	Perform system function
Window Logo + 0-9	Reserved for OEM use (see following text)

The combination keystroke of the Window Logo + 1-0 keys are reserved for OEM use for auxiliary functions (speaker volume, monitor brightness, password, etc.).

Key position 112 (marked with an application window icon) is used in combination with other keys for invoking Windows application functions.

C.2.4.4   Easy Access Keystrokes

The Easy Access keyboards (Figures C-7 and C-8) include additional keys (also referred to as buttons) used to streamline internet access and navigation.

These buttons, which can be re-programmed to provide other functions, have the default functionality described below:

7-Button Easy Access Keyboard:

Button #	Description	Default Function
1	Check email	Email
2	Go to community	Emoney
3	Extra web site	Compaq web site
4	Go to favorite web site	AltaVista web site
5	Internet search	Search
6	Instant answer	Travel expenses
7	E-commerce	Shopping

8-Button Easy Access Keyboard:

Button #	Description	Default Function
1	Go to favorite web site	Customer web site of choice
2	Go to AltaVista	AltaVista web site
3	Search	AltaVista search engine
4	Check Email	Launches user Email
5	Business Community	Industry specification info
6	Market Monitor	Launches Bloomberg market monitor
7	Meeting Center	Links to user's project center
8	News/PC Lock	News retrieval service

All buttons may be re-programmed by the user through the Easy Access utility.

C.2.5 KEYBOARD COMMANDS

Table C-1 lists the commands that the keyboard can send to the system (specifically, to the 8042-type logic).

Table C-1.
Keyboard-to-System Commands

Command	Value	Description
Key Detection Error/Over/run	00h [1] FFh [2]	Indicates to the system that a switch closure couldn't be identified.
BAT Completion	AAh	Indicates to the system that the BAT has been successful.
BAT Failure	FCh	Indicates failure of the BAT by the keyboard.
Echo	EEh	Indicates that the Echo command was received by the keyboard.
Acknowledge (ACK)	FAh	Issued by the keyboard as a response to valid system inputs (except the Echo and Resend commands).
Resend	FEh	Issued by the keyboard following an invalid input.
Keyboard ID	83ABh	Upon receipt of the Read ID command from the system, the keyboard issues the ACK command followed by the two IDS bytes.

Note:
   [1] Modes 2 and 3.
   [2] Mode 1 only.

C.2.6 SCAN CODES

The scan codes generated by the keyboard processor are determined by the mode the keyboard is operating in.

♦   Mode 1:   In Mode 1 operation, the keyboard generates scan codes compatible with 8088-/8086-based systems. To enter Mode 1, the scan code translation function of the keyboard controller must be disabled. Since translation is not performed, the scan codes generated in Mode 1 are identical to the codes required by BIOS. Mode 1 is initiated by sending command F0h with the 01h option byte. Applications can obtain system codes and status information by using BIOS function INT 16h with AH=00h, 01h, and 02h.

♦   Mode 2:   Mode 2 is the default mode for keyboard operation. In this mode, the 8042 logic translates the make codes from the keyboard processor into the codes required by the BIOS. This mode was made necessary with the development of the Enhanced III keyboard, which includes additional functions over earlier standard keyboards. Applications should use BIOS function INT 16h, with AH=10h, 11h, and 12h for obtaining codes and status data. In Mode 2, the keyboard generates the Break code, a two-byte sequence that consists of a Make code immediately preceded by F0h (i.e., Break code for 0Eh is "F0h 0Eh").

♦   Mode 3:   Mode 3 generates a different scan code set from Modes 1 and 2. Code translation must be disabled since translation for this mode cannot be done.

Table C-2.
Keyboard Scan Codes

Key Pos.	Legend	Make / Break Codes (Hex)		
		Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
1	Esc	01/81	76/F0 76	08/na
2	F1	3B/BB	05/F0 05	07/na
3	F2	3C/BC	06/F0 06	0F/na
4	F3	3D/BD	04/F0 04	17/na
5	F4	3E/BE	0C/F0 0C	1F/na
6	F5	3F/BF	03/F0 03	27/na
7	F6	40/C0	0B/F0 0B	2F/na
8	F7	41/C1	83/F0 83	37/na
9	F8	42/C2	0A/F0 0A	3F/na
10	F9	43/C3	01/FO 01	47/na
11	F10	44/C4	09/F0 09	4F/na
12	F11	57/D7	78/F0 78	56/na
13	F12	58/D8	07/F0 07	5E/na
14	Print Scrn	E0 2A E0 37/E0 B7 E0 AA E0 37/E0 B7 [1] [2] 54/84 [3]	E0 2A E0 7C/E0 F0 7C E0 F0 12 E0 7C/E0 F0 7C [1] [2] 84/F0 84 [3]	57/na
15	Scroll Lock	46/C6	7E/F0 7E	5F/na
16	Pause	E1 1D 45 E1 9D C5/na E0 46 E0 C6/na [3]	E1 14 77 E1 F0 14 F0 77/na E0 7E E0 F0 7E/na [3]	62/na
17	`	29/A9	0E/F0 E0	0E/F0 0E
18	1	02/82	16/F0 16	46/F0 46
19	2	03/83	1E/F0 1E	1E/F0 1E
20	3	04/84	26/F0 26	26/F0 26
21	4	05/85	25/F0 25	25/F0 25
22	5	06/86	2E/F0 2E	2E/F0 2E
23	6	07/87	36/F0 36	36/F0 36
24	7	08/88	3D/F0 3D	3D/F0 3D
25	8	09/89	3E/F0 3E	3E/F0 3E
26	9	0A/8A	46/F0 46	46/F0 46
27	0	0B/8B	45/F0 45	45/F0 45
28	-	0C/8C	4E/F0 4E	4E/F0 4E
29	=	0D/8D	55/F0 55	55/F0 55
30	\	2B/AB	5D/F0 5D	5C/F0 5C
31	Backspace	0E/8E	66/F0 66	66/F0 66
32	Insert	E0 52/E0 D2 E0 AA E0 52/E0 D2 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 52/E0 D2 E0 AA [6]	E0 70/E0 F0 70 E0 F0 12 E0 70/E0 F0 70 E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 70/E0 F0 70 E0 F0 12 [6]	67/na
33	Home	E0 47/E0 D2 E0 AA E0 52/E0 D2 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 47/E0 C7 E0 AA [6]	E0 6C/E0 F0 6C E0 F0 12 E0 6C/E0 F0 6C E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 6C/E0 F0 6C E0 F0 12 [6]	6E/na
34	Page Up	E0 49/E0 C7 E0 AA E0 49/E0 C9 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 49/E0 C9 E0 AA [6]	E0 7D/E0 F0 7D E0 F0 12 E0 7D/E0 F0 7D E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 7D/E0 F0 7D E0 F0 12 [6]	6F/na
35	Num Lock	45/C5	77/F0 77	76/na
36	/	E0 35/E0 B5 E0 AA E0 35/E0 B5 E0 2A [1]	E0 4A/E0 F0 4A E0 F0 12 E0 4A/E0 F0 4A E0 12 [1]	77/na
37	*	37/B7	7C/F0 7C	7E/na
38	-	4A/CA	7B/F0 7B	84/na
39	Tab	0F/8F	0D/F0 0D	0D/na
40	Q	10/90	15/F0 15	15/na

Continued

([x] Notes listed at end of table.)

Table C-2. Keyboard Scan Codes *(Continued)*

Key Pos	Legend	Make / Break Codes (Hex) Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
41	W	11/91	1D/F0 1D	1D/F0 1D
42	E	12/92	24/F0 24	24/F0 24
43	R	13/93	2D/F0 2D	2D/F0 2D
44	T	14/94	2C/F0 2C	2C/F0 2C
45	Y	15/95	35/F0 35	35/F0 35
46	U	16/96	3C/F0 3C	3C/F0 3C
47	I	17/97	43/F0 43	43/F0 43
48	O	18/98	44/F0 44	44/F0 44
49	P	19/99	4D/F0 4D	4D/F0 4D
50	[	1A/9A	54/F0 54	54/F0 54
51	]	1B/9B	5B/F0 5B	5B/F0 5B
52	Delete	E0 53/E0 D3 E0 AA E0 53/E0 D3 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 53/E0 D3 E0 AA [6]	E0 71/E0 F0 71 E0 F0 12 E0 71/E0 F0 71 E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 71/E0 F0 71 E0 F0 12 [6]	64/F0 64
53	End	E0 4F/E0 CF E0 AA E0 4F/E0 CF E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 4F/E0 CF E0 AA [6]	E0 69/E0 F0 69 E0 F0 12 E0 69/E0 F0 69 E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 69/E0 F0 69 E0 F0 12 [6]	65/F0 65
54	Page Down	E0 51/E0 D1 E0 AA E0 51/E0 D1 E0 2A [4] E0 @a E0 51/E0 D1 E0 AA [6]	E0 7A/E0 F0 7A E0 F0 12 E0 7A/E0 F0 7A E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 7A/E0 F0 7A E0 F0 12 [6]	6D/F0 6D
55	7	47/C7 [6]	6C/F0 6C [6]	6C/na [6]
56	8	48/C8 [6]	75/F0 75 [6]	75/na [6]
57	9	49/C9 [6]	7D/F0 7D [6]	7D/na [6]
58	+	4E/CE [6]	79/F0 79 [6]	7C/F0 7C
59	Caps Lock	3A/BA	58/F0 58	14/F0 14
60	A	1E/9E	1C/F0 1C	1C/F0 1C
61	S	1F/9F	1B/F0 1B	1B/F0 1B
62	D	20/A0	23/F0 23	23/F0 23
63	F	21/A1	2B/F0 2B	2B/F0 2B
64	G	22/A2	34/F0 34	34/F0 34
65	H	23/A3	33/F0 33	33/F0 33
66	J	24/A4	3B/F0 3B	3B/F0 3B
67	K	25/A5	42/F0 42	42/F0 42
68	L	26/A6	4B/F0 4B	4B/F0 4B
69	;	27/A7	4C/F0 4C	4C/F0 4C
70	'	28/A8	52/F0 52	52/F0 52
71	Enter	1C/9C	5A/F0 5A	5A/F0 5A
72	4	4B/CB [6]	6B/F0 6B [6]	6B/na [6]
73	5	4C/CC [6]	73/F0 73 [6]	73/na [6]
74	6	4D/CD [6]	74/F0 74 [6]	74/na [6]
75	Shift (left)	2A/AA	12/F0 12	12/F0 12
76	Z	2C/AC	1A/F0 1A	1A/F0 1A
77	X	2D/AD	22/F0 22	22/F0 22
78	C	2E/AE	21/F0 21	21/F0 21
79	V	2F/AF	2A/F0 2A	2A/F0 2A
80	B	30/B0	32/F0 32	32/F0 32

Continued

([x] Notes listed at end of table.)

Table C-2. Keyboard Scan Codes *(Continued)*

Key Pos.	Legend	Make / Break Codes (Hex) Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
81	N	31/B1	31/F0 31	31/F0 31
82	M	32/B2	3A/F0 3A	3A/F0 3A
83	,	33/B3	41/F0 41	41/F0 41
84	.	34/B4	49/F0 49	49/F0 49
85	/	35/B5	4A/F0 4A	4A/F0 4A
86	Shift (right)	36/B6	59/F0 59	59/F0 59
87		E0 48/E0 C8 E0 AA E0 48/E0 C8 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 48/E0 C8 E0 AA [6]	E0 75/E0 F0 75 E0 F0 12 E0 75/E0 F0 75 E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 75/E0 F0 75 E0 F0 12 [6]	63/F0 63
88	1	4F/CF [6]	69/F0 69 [6]	69/na [6]
89	2	50/D0 [6]	72/F0 72 [6]	72/na [6]
90	3	51/D1 [6]	7A/F0 7A [6]	7A/na [6]
91	Enter	E0 1C/E0 9C	E0 5A/F0 E0 5A	79/F0 79[6]
92	Ctrl (left)	1D/9D	14/F0 14	11/F0 11
93	Alt (left)	38/B8	11/F0 11	19/F0 19
94	(Space)	39/B9	29/F0 29	29/F0 29
95	Alt (right)	E0 38/E0 B8	E0 11/F0 E0 11	39/na
96	Ctrl (right)	E0 1D/E0 9D	E0 14/F0 E0 14	58/na
97		E0 4B/E0 CB E0 AA E0 4B/E0 CB E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 4B/E0 CB E0 AA [6]	E0 6B/Eo F0 6B E0 F0 12 E0 6B/E0 F0 6B E0 12[5] E0 12 E0 6B/E0 F0 6B E0 F0 12[6]	61/F0 61
98		E0 50/E0 D0 E0 AA E0 50/E0 D0 E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 50/E0 D0 E0 AA [6]	E0 72/E0 F0 72 E0 F0 12 E0 72/E0 F0 72 E0 12[5] E0 12 E0 72/E0 F0 72 E0 F0 12[6]	60/F0 60
99		E0 4D/E0 CD E0 AA E0 4D/E0 CD E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 4D/E0 CD E0 AA [6]	E0 74/E0 F0 74 E0 F0 12 E0 74/E0 F0 74 E0 12[5] E0 12 E0 74/E0 F0 74 E0 F0 12[6]	6A/F0 6A
100	0	52/D2 [6]	70/F0 70 [6]	70/na [6]
101	.	53/D3 [6]	71/F0 71 [6]	71/na [6]
102	na	7E/FE	6D/F0 6D	7B/F0 7B
103	na	2B/AB	5D/F0 5D	53/F0 53
104	na	36/D6	61/F0 61	13/F0 13
110	(Win95) [7]	E0 5B/E0 DB E0 AA E0 5B/E0 DB E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 5B/E0 DB E0 AA [6]	E0 1F/E0 F0 1F E0 F0 12 E0 1F/E0 F0 1F E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 1F/E0 F0 1F E0 F0 12 [6]	8B/F0 8B
111	(Win95) [7]	E0 5C/E0 DC E0 AA E0 5C/E0 DC E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 5C/E0 DC E0 AA [6]	E0 2F/E0 F0 27 E0 F0 12 E0 27/E0 F0 27 E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 27/E0 F0 27 E0 F0 12 [6]	8C/F0 8C
112	(Win Apps) [7]	E0 5D/E0 DD E0 AA E0 5D/E0 DD E0 2A [4] E0 2A E0 5D E0 DD E0 AA [6]	E0 2F/E0 F0 2F E0 F0 12 E0 2F/E0 F0 2F E0 12 [5] E0 12 E0 2F/E0 F0 2F E0 F0 12 [6	8D/F0 8D

Continued

([x] Notes listed at end of table.)

Changed - July 2000

Table C-2. Keyboard Scan Codes *(Continued)*

Key Pos.	Legend	Make / Break Codes (Hex) Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
Btn 1	[8]	E0 1E/E0 9E	E0 1C/E0 F0 1C	95/F0 95
Btn 2	[8]	E0 26/E0 A6	E0 4B/E0 F0 4B	9C/F0 9C
Btn 3	[8]	E0 25/E0 A5	E0 42/E0 F0 42	9D/F0 9D
Btn 4	[8]	E0 23/E0 A3	E0 33/E0 F0 33	9A/F0 9A
Btn 5	[8]	E0 21/E0 A1	E0 2B/E0 F0 2B	99/F0 99
Btn 6	[8]	E0 12/E0 92	E0 24/E0 F0 24	96/F0 96
Btn 7	[8]	E0 32/E0 B2	E0 3A/E0 F0 3A	97/F0 97
Btn 1	[9]	E0 23/E0 A3	E0 33/E0 F0 33	9A/F0 9A
Btn 2	[9]	E0 1F/E0 9F	E0 1B/E0 F0 1B	80/F0 80
Btn 3	[9]	E0 1A/E0 9A	E0 54/E0 F0 54	99/F0 99
Btn 4	[9]	E0 1E/E0 9E	E0 1C/E0 F0 1C	95/F0 95
Btn 5	[9]	E0 13/E0 93	E0 2D/E0 F0 2D	0C/F0 0C
Btn 6	[9]	E0 14/E0 94	E0 2C/E0 F0 2C	9D/F0 9D
Btn 7	[9]	E0 15/E0 95	E0 35/E0 F0 35	96/F0 96
Btn 8	[9]	E0 1B/E0 9B	E0 5B/E0 F0 5B	97/F0 97

NOTES:

All codes assume Shift, Ctrl, and Alt keys inactive unless otherwise noted.

NA = Not applicable

[1] Shift (left) key active.

[2] Ctrl key active.

[3] Alt key active.

[4] Left Shift key active. For active right Shift key, substitute AA/2A make/break codes for B6/36 codes.

[5] Left Shift key active. For active right Shift key, substitute F0 12/12 make/break codes
   for F0 59/59 codes.

[6] Num Lock key active.

[7] Windows keyboards only.

[8] 7-Button Easy Access keyboard.

[9] 8-Button Easy Access keyboard.

C.3   CONNECTORS

Two types of keyboard interfaces are used in Compaq systems: PS/2-type and USB-type. System units that provide a PS/2 connector will ship with a PS/2-type keyboard but may also support simultaneous connection of a USB keyboard. Systems that do not provide a PS/2 interface will ship with a USB keyboard. For a detailed description of the PS/2 and USB interfaces refer to chapter 5 "Input/Output" of this guide. The keyboard cable connectors and their pinouts are described in the following figures:

Pin	Function
1	Data
2	Not connected
3	Ground
4	+5 VDC
5	Clock
6	Not connected
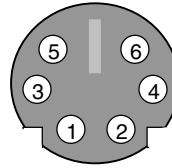
Figure C–9.   PS/2 Keyboard Cable Connector (Male)

Pin	Function
1	+5 VDC
2	Data (+)
3	Data (-)
4	Ground
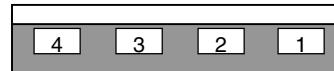
Figure C–10.   USB Keyboard Cable Connector (Male)

Appendix D
COMPAQ/NVIDIA TNT2 PRO
AGP GRAPHICS CARD

D.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes the Compaq/NVIDIA TNT2 Pro AGP Graphics Card used in the standard configuration on some models and also available as an option. This card (layout shown in the following figure) installs in a system's AGP slot. The Compaq/NVIDIA TNT2 Pro graphics card (P/N 189998-B21) provides high 2D performance as well as 3D capabilities.
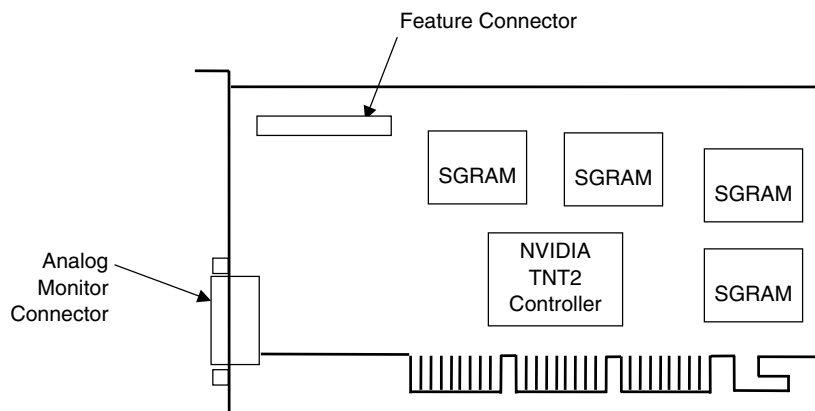
Figure D-1.   Compaq/NVIDIA TNT2 Pro AGP Graphics Card (P/N 198998-B21) Layout

This appendix covers the following subjects:

D.2   FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The NVIDIA TNT2 Pro-SD Graphics Card provides high performance 2D and 3D display imaging. The card's AGP design provides an economical approach to 3D processing by off-loading 3D effects such as texturing, z-buffering and alpha blending to the system memory while 16 megabytes of on-board SGRAM stores the main display image.
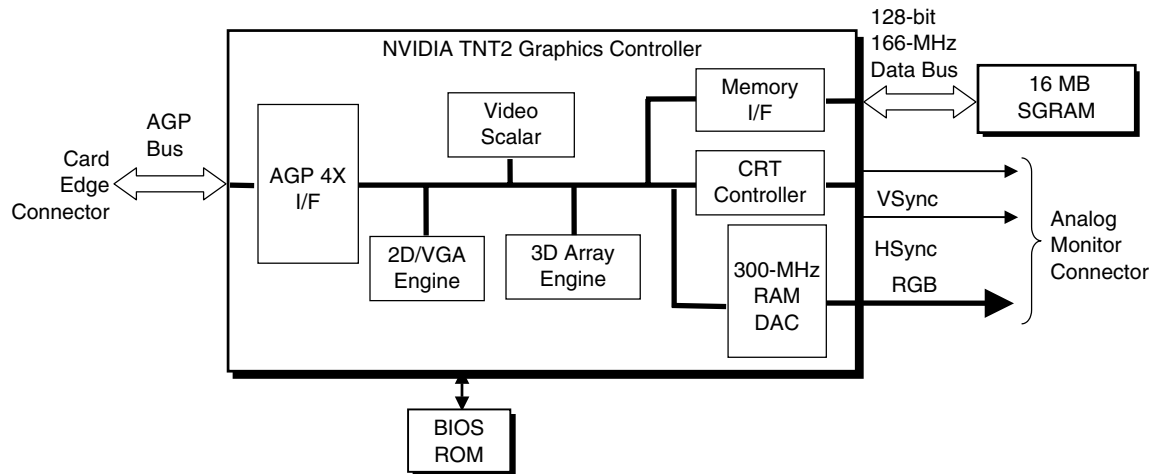
Figure D-2. NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics Card Block diagram

The NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics Card includes the following features:

♦ 16-MB SGRAM frame buffer using 128-bit 166-MHz access
♦ AGP 4X transfers with sideband addressing
♦ 2D drawing engine
♦ 3D rendering engine
♦ 300-MHz RAMDAC
♦ 32-bit Z/stencil buffer eliminates hidden screen portions for faster loading
♦ 32-bit color for increased image quality
♦ 30-fps full-screen DVD playback
♦ Dual-monitor support with a PCI graphics card

D.3   DISPLAY MODES

The graphics display modes supported by the NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics are listed in Table D-1.

Table D-1.
NVIDIA TNT2 Pro Graphics Display Modes

Resolution	Bits per pixel	Color Depth	Max. Refresh Frequency (Hz)
640 x 480	8	256	85
640 x 480	16	65K	85
640 x 480	24	16.7M	85
800 x 600	8	256	85
800 x 600	16	65K	85
800 x 600	24	16.7M	85
1024 x 768	8	256	85
1024 x 768	16	65K	85
1024 x 768	24	16.7M	85
1152 x 864	8	256	85
1152 x 864	16	65K	85
1152 x 864	24	16.7M	85
1280 x 1024	8	256	85
1280 x 1024	16	65K	85
1280 x 1024	24	16.7M	85
1600 x 1200	8	256	85
1600 x 1200	16	65K	85
1600 x 1200	24	16.7M	85
1800 x 1440	8	256	85
1800 x 1440	16	65K	85
1800 x 1440	24	16.7M	85
1920 x 1080	8	256	85
1920 x 1080	16	65K	85
1920 x 1080	24	16.7M	85
1920 x 1200	8	256	75

D.4   SOFTWARE SUPPORT INFORMATION

The NVIDIA TNT2 Pro graphics card is fully compatible with software written for legacy video modes (VGA, EGA, CGA) and needs no driver support for those modes.

Drivers are provided with or available for the card to provide extended mode support for the current operating systems and programming environments such as:

♦   Windows 98, 95
♦   Windows NT 4.0, 3.51
♦   Windows 3.11, 3.1
♦   OS/2
♦   Quick Draw
♦   MS Direct Draw and Direct X
♦   Direct 3D
♦   OpenGL

D.5   POWER MANAGEMENT AND CONSUMPTION

This controller provides monitor power control for monitors that conform to the VESA display power management signaling (DPMS) protocol. This protocol defines different power consumption conditions and uses the HSYNC and VSYNC signals to select a monitor's power condition. Table I-2 lists the monitor power conditions.

Table D-2.
Monitor Power Management Conditions

HSYNC	VSYNC	Power Mode	Description
Active	Active	On	Monitor is completely powered up. If activated, the inactivity counter counts down during system inactivity and if allowed to tiemout, generates an SMI to initiate the Suspend mode.
Active	Inactive	Suspend	Monitor's high voltage section is turned off and CRT heater (filament) voltage is reduced from 6.6 to 4.4 VDC. The Off mode inactivity timer counts down from the preset value and if allowed to timeout, another SMI is generated and serviced, resulting in the monitor being placed into the Off mode. Wake up from Suspend mode is typically a few seconds.
Inactive	Inactive	Off	Monitor's high voltage section and heater circuitry is turned off. Wake up from Off mode is a little longer than from Suspend.

The graphics card's maximum power consumption on the AGP bus is listed below:

Maximum current draw @ 3.3 VDC: 3.0 A
Maximum current draw @ 5.0 VDC: 50 mA
Maximum current draw @ 1.5 VDC: 10 mA
Maximum power consumption: 10.2 watts

D.6   CONNECTORS

There are two connectors associated with the graphics subsystem; the display/monitor connector and the Feature connector.

⚠ **NOTE:** The graphic card's edge connector mates with the AGP slot connector on the system board. This interface is described in chapter 4 of this guide.

The DB-15 disply/monitor connector is provided for connection of a compatible RGB/analog monitor. The Feature connector allows the attachment of an optional card such as a video tuner.

D.6.1 MONITOR CONNECTOR
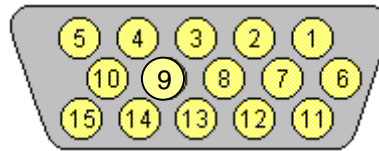
Figure D-3. VGA Monitor Connector, (Female DB-15, as viewed from rear).

Table D-3.
DB-15 Monitor Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	R	Red Analog	9	PWR	+5 VDC (fused) [1]
2	G	Blue Analog	10	GND	Ground
3	B	Green Analog	11	NC	Not Connected
4	NC	Not Connected	12	SDA	DDC2-B Data
5	GND	Ground	13	HSync	Horizontal Sync
6	R GND	Red Analog Ground	14	VSync	Vertical Sync
7	G GND	Green Analog Ground	15	SCL	DDC2-B Clock
8	B GND	Blue Analog Ground	--	--	--

NOTES:

[1] Fuse automatically resets when excessive load is removed.

This page is intentionally blank.

Appendix E
COMPAQ/NVIDIA QUADRO2 EX/MXR
AGP GRAPHICS CARDS

E.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes the Compaq/NVIDIA Quadro2 EX and MXR AGP Graphics Cards used in the standard configuration on some models and also available as an option. These cards (layout shown in the following figure) installs in a system's AGP slot and provide high 2D performance as well as entry-level 3D capabilities.
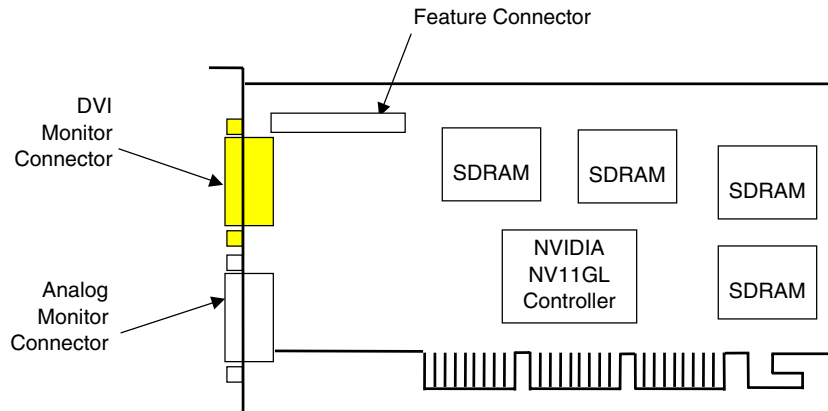
Figure E-1.   Compaq/NVIDIA Quadro2 EX or MXR AGP Graphics Card Layout

This appendix covers the following subjects:

E.2 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR Graphics Card provides high performance 2D and 3D display imaging. The card's AGP design provides an economical approach to 3D processing by off-loading 3D effects such as texturing, z-buffering and alpha blending to the system memory while 32 megabytes of on-board SDRAM stores the main display image.

Figure E-2. NVIDIA Quadro2 EX/MXR Graphics Card Block diagram

The NVIDIA Quadro2 EX/MXR Graphics Cards include the following features:

♦ 32-MB SDRAM frame buffer using 128-bit 183-MHz access
♦ AGP 4X transfers with sideband addressing
♦ 2D drawing engine
♦ 3D rendering engine
♦ 350-MHz RAMDAC
♦ 32-bit Z/stencil buffer eliminates hidden screen portions for faster loading
♦ 32-bit color for increased image quality
♦ 30-fps full-screen DVD playback
♦ Dual-monitor support with a PCI graphics card
♦ DVI monitor support (Quadro MXR only)

The NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR provides, in addition to the RGB monitor connector, a digital video interface (DVI) connector that can directly drive a DVI monitor or another RGB monitor through an adapter.

E.3   DISPLAY MODES

The 2D graphics display modes supported by the NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR Graphics are listed in Table E-1.

Table E-1.
NVIDIA Quadro2 EX/MXR Graphics Display Modes

Resolution	Bits per pixel	Color Depth	Max. Refresh Frequency (Hz) [1]	Memory Used For Texture
640 x 480	8	256	240	N/A
640 x 480	16	65K	240	N/A
640 x 480	32	16.7M	240	28.4 MB
800 x 600	8	256	240	N/A
800 x 600	16	65K	240	N/A
800 x 600	32	16.7M	240	26.4 MB
1024 x 768	8	256	200	N/A
1024 x 768	16	65K	200	N/A
1024 x 768	32	16.7M	200	22.8 MB
1152 x 864	8	256	170	N/A
1152 x 864	16	65K	170	N/A
1152 x 864	32	16.7M	170	20.3 MB
1280 x 1024	8	256	150	N/A
1280 x 1024	16	65K	150	N/A
1280 x 1024	32	16.7M	150	16.6 MB
1600 x 1000	8	256	120	N/A
1600 x 1000	16	65K	120	22.6 MB
1600 x 1000	32	16.7M	120	13.3 MB
1600 x 1200	8	256	100	N/A
1600 x 1200	16	65K	100	20.8 MB
1600 x 1200	32	16.7M	100	9.5 MB
1600 x 1280	8	256	100	N/A
1600 x 1280	16	65K	100	20.0 MB
1600 x 1280	32	16.7M	100	8.0 MB
1920 x 1080	8	256	85	N/A
1920 x 1080	16	65K	85	19.9 MB
1920 x 1080	32	16.7M	85	7.7 MB
1920 x 1200	8	256	85	N/A
1920 x 1200	16	65K	85	18.5 MB
1920 x 1200	32	16.7M	85	5.0 MB

NOTE:

[1] Values reflect hardware capability. May be restricted to lower frequency by operating system.

E.4   SOFTWARE SUPPORT INFORMATION

The NVIDIA Quadro2 MXR graphics card is fully compatible with software written for legacy video modes (VGA, EGA, CGA) and needs no driver support for those modes.

Drivers are provided with or available for the card to provide extended mode support for the current operating systems and programming environments such as:

♦ Windows 3.1, 95, 98, 2000, ME
♦ Windows NT 4.0, 3.51
♦ Whistler
♦ Linux
♦ OS/2
♦ Quick Draw
♦ MS Direct Draw and Direct X
♦ Direct 3D
♦ OpenGL

E.5   POWER MANAGEMENT AND CONSUMPTION

This controller provides monitor power control for monitors that conform to the VESA display power management signaling (DPMS) protocol. This protocol defines different power consumption conditions and uses the HSYNC and VSYNC signals to select a monitor's power condition. Table E-2 lists the monitor power conditions.

Table E-2.
Monitor Power Management Conditions

HSYNC	VSYNC	Power Mode	Description
Active	Active	On	Monitor is completely powered up. If activated, the inactivity counter counts down during system inactivity and if allowed to timeout, generates an SMI to initiate the Suspend mode.
Active	Inactive	Suspend	Monitor's high voltage section is turned off and CRT heater (filament) voltage is reduced from 6.6 to 4.4 VDC. The Off mode inactivity timer counts down from the preset value and if allowed to timeout, another SMI is generated and serviced, resulting in the monitor being placed into the Off mode. Wake up from Suspend mode is typically a few seconds.
Inactive	Inactive	Off	Monitor's high voltage section and heater circuitry is turned off. Wake up from Off mode is a little longer than from Suspend.

E.6   CONNECTORS

There are two connectors associated with the graphics subsystem; the display/monitor connector and the Feature connector.

> ⚠ **NOTE:** The graphic card's edge connector mates with the AGP slot connector on the system board. This interface is described in chapter 4 of this guide.

The DB-15 disply/monitor connector is provided for connection of a compatible RGB/analog monitor. The Feature connector allows the attachment of an optional card such as a video tuner.

E.6.1 MONITOR CONNECTOR
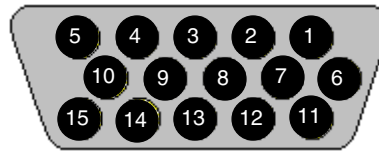
Figure E-3. VGA Monitor Connector, (Female DB-15, as viewed from rear).

Table E-3.
DB-15 Monitor Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	R	Red Analog	9	PWR	+5 VDC (fused) [1]
2	G	Blue Analog	10	GND	Ground
3	B	Green Analog	11	NC	Not Connected
4	NC	Not Connected	12	SDA	DDC2-B Data
5	GND	Ground	13	HSync	Horizontal Sync
6	R GND	Red Analog Ground	14	VSync	Vertical Sync
7	G GND	Green Analog Ground	15	SCL	DDC2-B Clock
8	B GND	Blue Analog Ground	--	--	--

NOTES:

[1] Fuse automatically resets when excessive load is removed.

This page is intentionally blank.

Appendix F
COMPAQ/Matrox Millennium G450
AGP GRAPHICS CARD

F.1   INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes the Compaq/Matrox Millennium G450 AGP Graphics Card used in the standard configuration on some models and also available as an option. This card (layout shown in the following figure) installs in a system's AGP slot. The Compaq/Matrox Millennium G450 graphics card (SP# 203626-001) provides high 2D performance and entry-level 3D capabilities. This card features a dual-RAMDAC design for driving two analog displays.
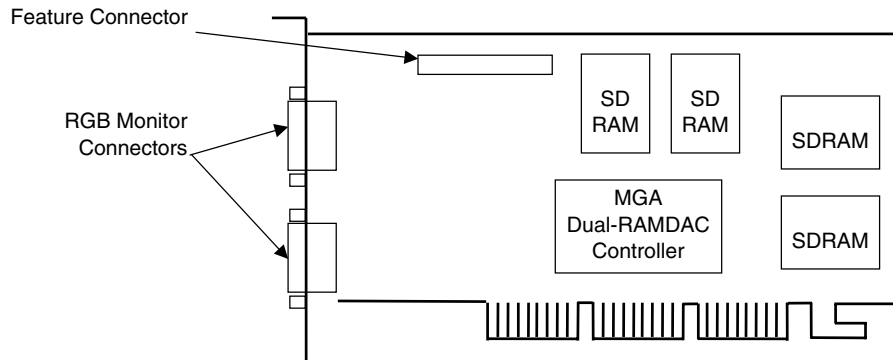
Figure F-1. Compaq/Matrox Millennium G450 AGP Graphics Card Layout (PCA# 202901-001)

This appendix covers the following subjects:

F.2   FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The Matrox Millennium G450-SD Graphics Card provides high performance 2D and 3D display imaging. The card's AGP design provides an economical approach to 3D processing by off-loading 3D effects such as texturing, z-buffering and alpha blending to the system memory while 32 megabytes of on-board SDRAM stores the main display image.
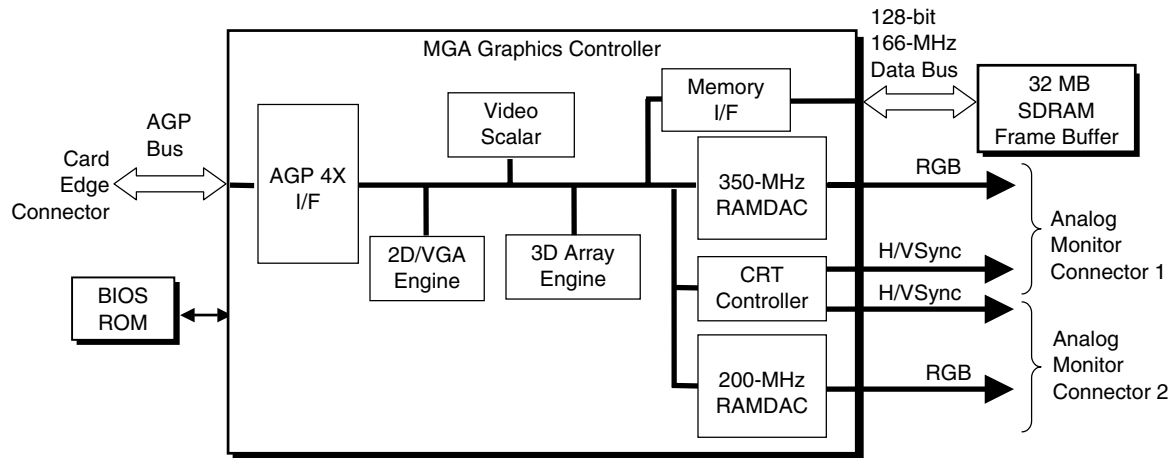
Figure F-2. Matrox Millennium G450 Graphics Card Block diagram

The Matrox Millennium G450 Graphics Card includes the following features:

- ♦ 64-MB SDRAM frame buffer using 128-bit 166-MHz access
- ♦ AGP 4X transfers with sideband addressing
- ♦ 2D drawing engine with:
    - 128-bit BitBLTs, rectangle/polygon fills, line draws
    - Hardware cursor
    - 8-/16-/32-bpp mode acceleration
- ♦ Dual-head features:
    - Two analog monitor (RGB) ports
    - DVD max mode
    - DualHead zoom mode
    - DualHead clone mode
    - DualHead TV output mode
- ♦ 3D accelerator with:
    - Hardware transform and lighting
    - Anistropic filtering
    - Specular lighting diffuse, flat and Gouraud shading
    - 16-/24-bit Z-buffering
- ♦ 360-MHz primary RAMDAC, 200-MHz secondary RAMDAC
- ♦ VESA compliancy:
    - Dual DDC2B monitor support
    - VIP 2.0 interface
    - DPMS, EPA Energy Star, and ACPI-compliant power management

F.3   DISPLAY MODES

The graphics display modes supported by the Matrox Millennium G450 Graphics are listed in Table F-1.

Table F-1.
Matrox Millennium G450 Graphics Display Modes

Resolution	Bits per pixel	Color Depth	Max. Vertical Refresh Freq. [1]	Supporting RAMDAC
640 x 480	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
640 x 480	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
640 x 480	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
640 x 480	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
800 x 600	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
800 x 600	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
800 x 600	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
800 x 600	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1024 x 768	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1024 x 768	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1024 x 768	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1024 x 768	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1152 x 864	8	256	75 Hz	Primary
1152 x 864	16	65K	75 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1152 x 864	24	16.7M	75 Hz	Primary
1152 x 864	32	16.7M	75 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1280 x 960	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1280 x 960	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1280 x 960	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1280 x 960	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1280 x 1024	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1280 x 1024	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1280 x 1024	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1280 x 1024	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1600 x 1200	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1600 x 1200	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1600 x 1200	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1600 x 1200	32	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary, Secondary
1800 x 1440	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1800 x 1440	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary
1800 x 1440	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1856 x 1392	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1856 x 1392	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary
1856 x 1392	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
1920 x 1440	8	256	85 Hz	Primary
1920 x 1440	16	65K	85 Hz	Primary
1920 x 1440	24	16.7M	85 Hz	Primary
2048 x 768	8	256	75 Hz	Primary
2048 x 768	16	65K	75 Hz	Primary

NOTE:

[1] Value reflects hardware capabilities only. May be restricted by operating system.

F.4   SOFTWARE SUPPORT INFORMATION

The Matrox Millennium G450 graphics card is fully compatible with software written for legacy video modes (VGA, EGA, CGA) and needs no driver support for those modes.

Drivers are provided with or available for the card to provide extended mode support for the current operating systems and programming environments such as:

♦ Windows 2000
♦ Windows NT 4.0
♦ Autodesk AutoCAD R14 and 2000
♦ Kintex 3D Studio Max
♦ 2D GDI
♦ MS DirectDraw DX6-7, ActiveX, DirectX, Direct3D,
♦ OpenGL 1.1 and 1.2

F.5   POWER MANAGEMENT AND CONSUMPTION

This controller provides monitor power control for monitors that conform to the VESA display power management signaling (DPMS) protocol. This protocol defines different power consumption conditions and uses the HSYNC and VSYNC signals to select a monitor's power condition. Table F-2 lists the monitor power conditions.

Table F-2.
Monitor Power Management Conditions

HSYNC	VSYNC	Power Mode	Description
Active	Active	On	Monitor is completely powered up. If activated, the inactivity counter counts down during system inactivity and if allowed to tiemout, generates an SMI to initiate the Suspend mode.
Active	Inactive	Suspend	Monitor's high voltage section is turned off and CRT heater (filament) voltage is reduced from 6.6 to 4.4 VDC. The Off mode inactivity timer counts down from the preset value and if allowed to timeout, another SMI is generated and serviced, resulting in the monitor being placed into the Off mode. Wake up from Suspend mode is typically a few seconds.
Inactive	Inactive	Off	Monitor's high voltage section and heater circuitry is turned off. Wake up from Off mode is a little longer than from Suspend.

Power consumption of this card on the PCI bus is listed in the following table:

Voltage	VddQ (1.5 VDC)	Vcc3 (3.3 VDC)	Vcc5 (5.0 VDC)
Maximum Current Drain	.05 A	2.4 A	0.2 A
Maximum Power Consumption	0.75 W	7.99 W	1.04 W

Total maximum power consumption for this card is 9.1 watts.

F.6   CONNECTORS

There are three connectors associated with the graphics subsystem; two display/monitor connectors and the Feature connector.

⚠ **NOTE:** The graphic card's edge connector mates with the AGP slot connector on the system board. This interface is described in chapter 4 of this guide.

F.6.1 MONITOR CONNECTOR

The display/monitor connector is provided for connection of a compatible RGB/analog monitor.
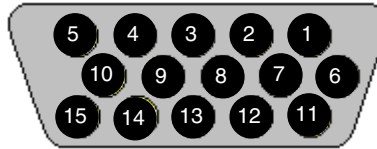
Figure F-3. VGA Monitor Connector, (One of two female DB-15, as viewed from rear).

Table F-3.
DB-15 Monitor Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1	R	Red Analog	9	PWR	+5 VDC (fused) [1]
2	G	Blue Analog	10	GND	Ground
3	B	Green Analog	11	NC	Not Connected
4	NC	Not Connected	12	SDA	DDC2-B Data
5	GND	Ground	13	HSync	Horizontal Sync
6	R GND	Red Analog Ground	14	VSync	Vertical Sync
7	G GND	Green Analog Ground	15	SCL	DDC2-B Clock
8	B GND	Blue Analog Ground	--	--	--

NOTES:
   [1] Fuse automatically resets when excessive load is removed.

F.6.2 VIDEO FEATURE CONNECTOR

The Video Feature connector allows a video peripheral such as a TV tuner card to provide video input to the graphics card. This interface is compliant with VESA VIP specification 1.1.
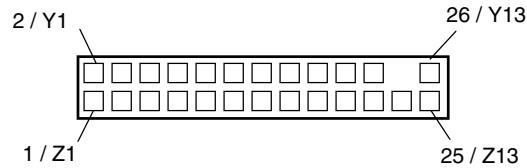
Figure F-4. Feature Connector (26-Pin Header)

Table F-4.
Video In Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Description	Pin	Signal	Description
1 / Z1	GND	Ground	2 / Y1	P0	Pixel Data 0
3 / Z2	GND	Ground	4 / Y2	P1	Pixel Data 1
5 / Z3	GND	Ground	6 / Y3	P2	Pixel Data 2
7 / Z4	HAD1		8 / Y4	P3	Pixel Data 3
9 / Z5	HAD0	External Sync	10 / Y5	P4	Pixel Data 4
11 / Z6	HCTL	External Clock	12 / Y6	P5	Pixel Data 5
13 / Z7	SCL	Serial Clock	14 / Y7	P6	Pixel Data 6
15 / Z8	GND	Ground	16 / Y8	P7	Pixel Data 7
17 / Z9	GND	Ground	18 / Y9	DCLK	Pixel Data Clock
19 / Z10	GND	Ground	20 / Y10	NC	Not Connected
21 / Z11	GND	Ground	22 / Y11	NC	Not Connected
23 / Z12	VIRQ		24 / Y12	--	Key
25 / Z13	SDA	Serial Data	26 / Y13	GND	Ground

Appendix G
COMPAQ/ADAPTEC 29160N SCSI HOST ADAPTER

G.1   INTRODUCTION

The Compaq/Adaptec 29160N SCSI Host Adapter (Compaq SP# 158364-001) is a PCI peripheral that provides high performance interfacing with compatible SCSI peripherals, typically SCSI hard drives. The card installs in a PCI slot and supports full bus mastering capability.

This appendix covers the following subjects:

♦   Functional description (G.2)   page G-2
♦   SCSI adapter programming (G.3)   page G-3
♦   Specifications (G.4)   page G-3
♦   SCSI connectors (G.5)   page G-4
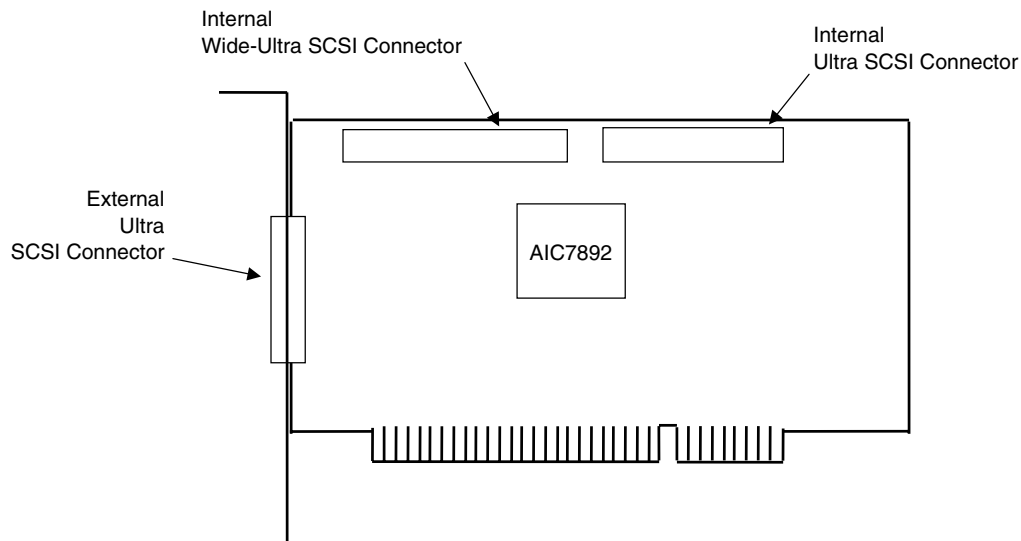
Figure G–1.   Compaq/Adaptec 29160N SCSI Host Adapter Card Layout (PCA# 157342-001)

G.2   FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

A block diagram of the SCSI Adapter is shown in Figure L-2. The adapter's architecture is based on the AIC-7892 SCSI controller working off the 32-bit, 66-/33-MHz PCI bus. Providing full bus mastering capability, the adapter supports data transfers up to 266 MB/s using the burst mode rate on a 66-MHz 32-bit PCI bus. The AIC-7892 controller is an Ultra160 controller with an on-board 20-MIPS SCSI sequencer that can process SCSI commands without intervention from the host microprocessor. The sequencer uses micro-code that is downloaded from the host during initialization. Single-ended SCSI drivers are built into the controller and a 1-K data FIFO and an internal 4-KB SRAM memory. An LED is provided to indicate SCSI bus activity.

The AIC7892 provides a memory interface that is used by the Serial EEPROM and the BIOS ROM. The serial EEPROM stores non-volatile configuration data and the BIOS ROM (which is a flash ROM) contains additional configuration data and SCSI functions. The programmable array logic (PAL) controls the Serial EEPROM-to-AIC7892 interface.
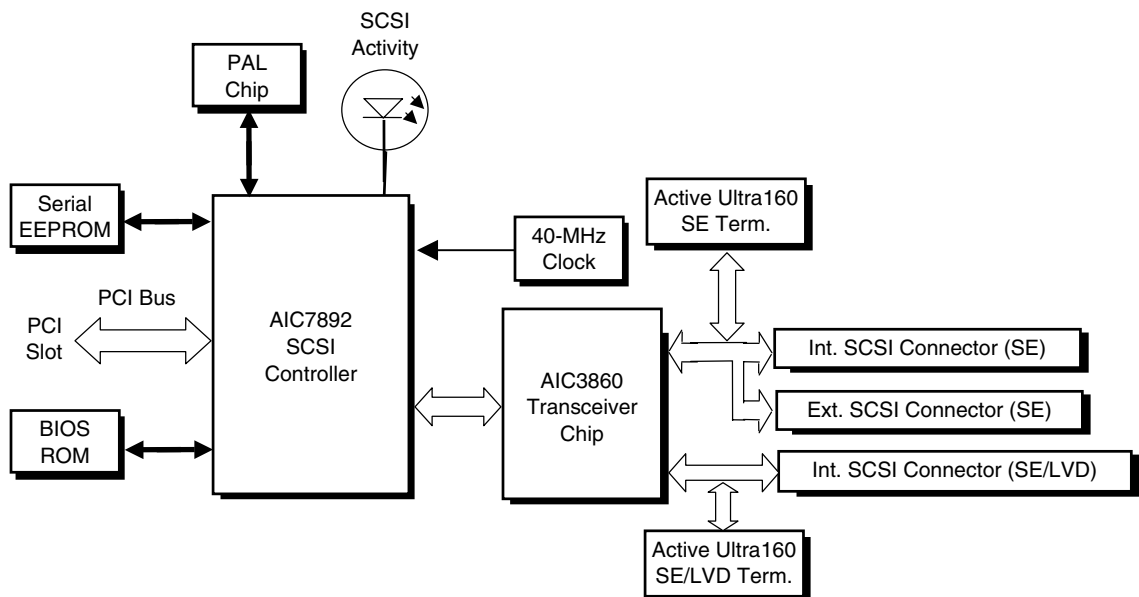
Figure G–2. Compaq/Adaptec Ultra SCSI Adapter Card Block Diagram

The AIC7892 controller supports dual-mode low-voltage differential (LVD) SCSI I/O up to the Ultra160 data rate of 160 Mbytes. Both single-ended (SE) and LVD devices can co-exist on the SCSI bus, although operation will default to the SE mode. In SE mode, transfer rates are limited to the speed of the slower device. High-voltage differential (HVD) devices are supported for rates up to Ultra speeds.

The AIC7892 also supports cyclic redundancy check (CRC) codes, an improvement over parity checking used earlier.

G.3   SCSI ADAPTER PROGRAMMING

G.3.1 SCSI ADAPTER CONFIGURATION

The Adaptec SCSI Host Adapter Card is a PCI device and configured using PCI protocol and PCI Configuration Space registers (PCI addresses 00h-FFh) as discussed in Chapter 4 of this guide. Configuration is accomplished by BIOS during POST and re-configurable with software. The vender ID and device ID for the adapter are as follows:

Vender ID (PCI config. addr. 00h): 9005h
Device ID (PCI config, addr. 02h): 0080h

G.3.2 SCSI ADAPTER CONTROL

Control of the SCSI host adapter is affected through I/O mapped registers mapped as listed in Table G-1.

Table G-1.
Ultra SCSI Host Adapter Card
Control Register Mapping

I/O Addr.	Function
n00h-n1Fh	SCSI Register Array
n20h-n5Fh	Scratch RAM
n60h-n7Fh	Phase Engine (Sequencer)
n80h-n9Fh	Host Registers
n00h-nFFh	SCB Array

n = prefix address supplied by the BASEADR0 PCI Config. Reg.

G.4   SPECIFICATIONS

The operating specifications are listed in Table G-2.

Table G-2.
Ultra SCSI Host Adapter Card Specifications

Operating Voltage	+5 VDC
Maximum Current Draw	2 A
Operating Temperature	32°F (0°C) to 131°F (55°C)

G.5   SCSI CONNECTORS

This SCSI card provides two internal header-type connectors (one 50-pin, one 68-pin) and one external D-type connector (50-pin).

G.5.1 EXTERNAL 50-PIN ULTRA SCSI CONNECTOR

The card provides one external 50-pin D-type Ultra SCSI connector. External cabling should meet T-10 SPI-2 standards (50-conductor, round shielded).
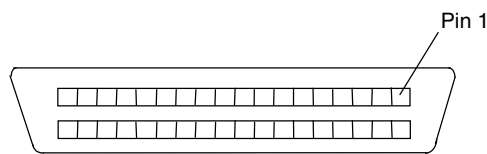
Figure G–3. External Ultra SCSI Connector (50-pin)

Table G-3.
External Ultra SCSI Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Function	Pin	Signal	Function
1	GND	Ground	26	DB0-	Data Bit 0
2	GND	Ground	27	DB1-	Data Bit 1
3	GND	Ground	28	DB2-	Data Bit 2
4	GND	Ground	29	DB3-	Data Bit 3
5	GND	Ground	30	DB4-	Data Bit 4
6	GND	Ground	31	DB5-	Data Bit 5
7	GND	Ground	32	DB6-	Data Bit 6
8	GND	Ground	33	DB7-	Data Bit 7
9	GND	Ground	34	DBP	Data Bus Pulse
10	GND	Ground	35	GND	Ground
11	GND	Ground	36	GND	Ground
12	GND	Ground	37	GND	Ground
13	RSVD	Reserved	38	TERMPWR	Termination Power
14	GND	Ground	39	GND	Ground
15	GND	Ground	40	GND	Ground
16	GND	Ground	41	ATN-	Attention
17	GND	Ground	42	GND	Ground
18	GND	Ground	43	BSY-	Busy
19	GND	Ground	44	ACK-	Acknowledge
20	GND	Ground	45	SBRST-	Burst
21	GND	Ground	46	MSG-	Message Activity
22	GND	Ground	47	SEL-	Select
23	GND	Ground	48	C-/D	Control/Data Transfer Indicator
24	GND	Ground	49	REQ-	Request
25	GND	Ground	50	I-/O	Input/Output Indicator

G.5.2 INTERNAL 50-PIN ULTRA SCSI CONNECTOR

The card provides one internal 50-pin header-type Ultra SCSI connector. Internal cabling to this connector should consists of an unshielded connector with a 50-conductor flat cable as specified in ANSI standard X3T9.2/375R.

Pin 49   Pin 1

Pin 50   Pin 2
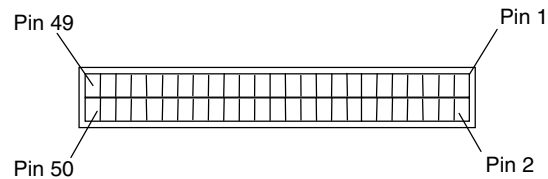
Figure G–4. Internal 50-Pin Ultra SCSI Connector

Table G-4.
Internal 50-Pin Ultra SCSI Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Function	Pin	Signal	Function
1	GND	Ground	2	DB0-	Data Bit 0
3	GND	Ground	4	DB1-	Data Bit 1
5	GND	Ground	6	DB2-	Data Bit 2
7	GND	Ground	8	DB3-	Data Bit 3
9	GND	Ground	10	DB4-	Data Bit 4
11	GND	Ground	12	DB5-	Data Bit 5
13	GND	Ground	14	DB6-	Data Bit 6
15	GND	Ground	16	DB7-	Data Bit 7
17	GND	Ground	18	DBP	Data Bus Pulse
19	GND	Ground	20	GND	Ground
21	GND	Ground	22	CS	Cable Sense
23	Open	Open	24	Open	Open
25	Open	Open	26	TERMPWR	Termination Power
27	Open	Open	28	Open	Open
29	GND	Ground	30	GND	Ground
31	GND	Ground	32	ATN-	Attention
33	GND	Ground	34	GND	Ground
35	GND	Ground	36	BSY-	Busy
37	GND	Ground	38	ACK-	Acknowledge
39	GND	Ground	40	SBRST-	Reset
41	GND	Ground	42	MSG-	Message Activity
43	GND	Ground	44	SEL-	Select
45	GND	Ground	46	C-/D	Control/Data Transfer Indicator
47	GND	Ground	48	REQ-	Request
49	GND	Ground	50	I-/O	Input/Output Indicator

G.5.3 INTERNAL 68-PIN ULTRA160 SCSI CONNECTOR

The card provides one internal 68-pin Ultra160 SCSI connector. This connection is designed for a 68-conductor unshielded Twist 'N Flat cable as specified in the T-10 SPI-2 standard.
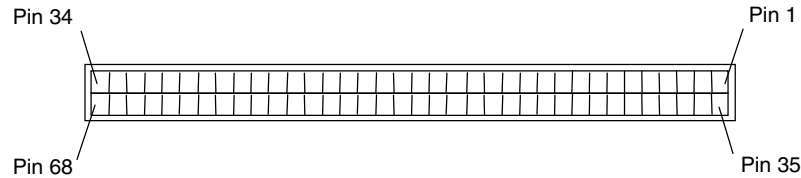
Figure G–5. Ultra 160 SCSI Connector (68-pin header type)

Table G-5.
Ultra160 SCSI Connector Pinout

Pin	Signal	Function	Pin	Signal	Function
1	GND	Ground	35	DB12	Data Bit 12
2	GND	Ground	36	DB13	Data Bit 13
3	GND	Ground	37	DB14	Data Bit 14
4	GND	Ground	38	DB15	Data Bit 15
5	GND	Ground	39	DBP-	Data Bus Parity
6	GND	Ground	40	DB0-	Data Bit 0
7	GND	Ground	41	DB1-	Data Bit 1
8	GND	Ground	42	DB2-	Data Bit 2
9	GND	Ground	43	DB3-	Data Bit 3
10	GND	Ground	44	DB4-	Data Bit 4
11	GND	Ground	45	DB5-	Data Bit 5
12	GND	Ground	46	DB6-	Data Bit 6
13	GND	Ground	47	DB7-	Data Bit 7
14	GND	Ground	48	DBP-	Data Bus Parity
15	GND	Ground	49	GND	Ground
16	GND	Ground	50	GND	Ground
17	TERMPWR	Termination Power	51	TERMPWR	Termination Power
18	TERMPWR	Termination Power	52	TERMPWR	Termination Power
19	GND	Ground	53	Int_Out-	Interrupt Out
20	GND	Ground	54	SBRST-	Burst
21	GND	Ground	55	ATN-	Attention
22	GND	Ground	56	GND	Ground
23	GND	Ground	57	BSY-	Busy
24	GND	Ground	58	ACK-	Acknowledge
25	GND	Ground	59	RESET-	Reset
26	GND	Ground	60	MSG-	Message Activity
27	GND	Ground	61	SEL-	Select
28	GND	Ground	62	C-/D	Control/Data Transfer Indicator
29	GND	Ground	63	REQ-	Request
30	GND	Ground	64	I-/O	Input/Output Indicator
31	GND	Ground	65	DB8-	Data Bit 8
32	GND	Ground	66	DB9-	Data Bit 9
33	GND	Ground	67	DB10-	Data Bit 10
34	GND	Ground	68	DB11-	Data Bit 11

INDEX

This page is intentionally blank.